This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

TX 438.21 .H579
Hervey, William Addison,
Supplementary exercises to Thomas's Prac
Stanford University Libraries
3 6105 04925 9786

SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES TO THOMAS'S GERMAN GRAMMAR

Hervey

HENRY HOLT & CO.

GEORGE HEMPL
STANFORD UNIVERSITY
CALIFORNIA.

SCHOOL OF EDUCATION
LIBRARY

TEXTBOOK
COLLECTION

STANFORD UNIVERSITY
LIBRARIES

SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES

TO

THOMAS'S PRACTICAL GERMAN GRAMMAR

[BASED IN PART ON THE READING LESSONS AND COLLOQUIES]

BY

WM. ADDISON HERVEY
Instructor in Columbia University

DEPARTMENT OF
EDUCATION
FEB 26 1915
LELAND STANFORD
JUNIOR UNIVERSITY

NEW YORK
HENRY HOLT AND COMPANY
1901

602795

C

Copyright, 1901,

BY

HENRY HOLT & CO.

ROBERT DRUMMOND, PRINTER, NEW YORK.

NOTE.

THESE exercises have been prepared at the request of Professor Thomas and the publishers, to provide additional or alternative material for drill in grammar and composition. Since the exercises in the *Practical German Grammar* are unique in character, the conscious imitation in the new exercises will be apparent. They comprise two complete sets, arranged as follows: The Roman numerals correspond to those in the Grammar, and the several exercises under each numeral are designated by the letters of the alphabet consecutively with the original exercises. Thus, when the Grammar has two exercises, one German, the other English, designated respectively *a* and *b*, the four new exercises are designated *c*, *d*, *e*, *f*; *c* and *e* contain German sentences, *d* and *f* English. After Exercise XXI the German sentences are discontinued, the single exercise in the Grammar being designated *a*, the corresponding new exercises *b* and *c*.

The vocabulary of the first of the new exercises (*b*), or of the first pair (*c*, *d*), as the case may be, includes many words from the corresponding vocabulary in the Grammar, which, it will be noted, also serves for the Reading Lesson or Colloquy having the same Roman numeral. That of the second exercise (*c*), or the second pair (*e*, *f*), introduces new words, the sentences illustrating the same grammatical principles, but this vocabulary is regularly much shorter

than the preceding. Each vocabulary contains all the new words used in the respective exercise or exercises and is independent of that in the Grammar.

The first English exercise following a Reading Lesson is based substantially upon it, and the pupil's attention is called to this fact. In the later exercises of this kind the matter is essentially connected discourse, divided into numbered sentences for the sake of convenience. For some classes these themes may be somewhat difficult until they have had practice with the simpler material of the other exercises. Much of the difficulty will disappear, however, if the matter upon which they are based be carefully examined. Similarly a number of exercises are based in whole or in part upon corresponding colloquies; although not so arranged, they can be readily adapted to conversational purposes should it be desirable. Several exercises have been introduced independently of the scheme outlined above, where it seemed that further practice might in some instances be desired. Such is the case in respect to the modal auxiliaries, reflexive and compound verbs, and prepositions. Most of the exercises based on Reading Lessons and Colloquies are too long for a single assignment and will make two lessons of the proper length, either for different days or for different sections of the same class.

Somewhat full notes are added and many references are made to the Second Part of the Grammar; it is believed that this may encourage the very important 'reference-habit.' The fact that few teachers will wish to use all of the exercises with a given class has made necessary occasional repetition and cross-reference. The general vocabularies at the end include every word occurring in the exercises, with necessary grammatical information. These vocabularies, as appears from the paging, are identical with those in the new (*Third*) edition of the Grammar, and they will not be published with the Supplementary Exercises after January 1, 1903. Cognates are indicated as hereto-

fore in the Grammar, and the general arrangement has been determined by the same model.

There are provided, then, in all, three sets of exercises for the *Practical German Grammar*, which can be used separately or in combination according to the judgment and convenience of the instructor.

To Professor Thomas my thanks are due for his careful examination and helpful criticism of the Exercises and for reading the proofs.

W. A. H.

COLUMBIA UNIVERSITY, April, 1901.

N.B.—English words enclosed in ( ) are to be *omitted* in the German translation; those enclosed in [ ] are to be *inserted.*

References to *paragraph* and to *page* and *note* (e.g. p. 34, n. 5) are to the Grammar in every case; those to *exercise* and *note* (e.g. Ex. XVIII e, n. 3) are to the Supplementary Exercises.

SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES.

Strong Nouns: First Class.

EXERCISE V c.

1. Er ist Lehrer.[1] 2. Der Vater des Fräuleins ist ein Amerikaner. 3. Der Onkel[2] wohnt im Sommer im Gebirge. 4. Der Apfel gehört[3] dem Bruder. 5. Das Wasser ist nicht sehr kalt. 6. Die Kasten gehören dem Lehrer. 7. Die Gebäude im Dörfchen sind nicht groß. 8. Die Äpfel sind auf dem Boden. 9. Der Bruder des Lehrers geht morgen nach[4] dem Dörfchen. 10. Die Mutter besucht einen Onkel hier im Dörfchen. 11. Der Kasten ist auf dem Boden in des Vaters Zimmer.[5] 12. Das Leben eines Lehrers ist sehr interessant.[6]

EXERCISE V d.

1. He is an American. 2. The brothers live[7] here in summer.[8] 3. The water is fresh, but not very cold. 4. My father's brother[9] is a teacher.[10] 5. He is visiting[11] his uncle in the mountains. 6. Do the apples belong to[12] your mother? 7. The young ladies' room is cold. 8. The boxes are not in the building. 9. The winters are cold and the summers are hot in the little village. 10. The teacher and his brothers are Americans. 11. We shall visit[13] the little village in the mountains to-morrow.[14] 12. The rooms in my uncle's building are very large.

VOCABULARY.

NOTE.—The abbreviation *s.* after a noun means 'strong'; *w.*, 'weak'; *mx.*, 'mixed'. The figure gives the class. If a noun has umlaut as plural-sign, the fact will always be indicated. Thus Apfel, *m. s. 1.* (*pl.* Äpfel), is to be read: Apfel, masculine noun, strong declension, first class, plural Äpfel. For explanation of the use of **black letter**, ***italics***, and [ ] see Note, page 28, top. The vocabulary of Ex. IV (page 28) is supposed to have been learned, and words given there, other than nouns, will not be repeated.

Amerika'ner, *m. s. 1, American.*
Apfel, *m. s. 1* (*pl.* Äpfel), **apple.**
auf, *prep.* (*dat. and acc.*),[15] on, upon, [**up**].
besu'chen, *v.*, visit [**-seek, beseech**].
Boden, *m. s. 1* (*pl.* — and ö), ground, floor, [**bottom**].
Bruder, *m. s. 1,* (*pl.* ü), **brother.**
Dörfchen, *n. s. 1,* little village, [**thorp-**].[16]
frisch, *adj.*, **fresh.**
Gebirge, *n. s. 1,* mountains.
gehen, *v.*, **go.**
groß, *adj.*, large, **great.**
heiß, *adj.*, **hot.**
hier, *adv.*, **here.**
kalt, *adj.*, **cold.**
Leben, *n. s. 1,* life, [**live**].
Lehrer, *m. s. 1,* teacher.
Morgen, *m. s. 1,* **morn**-ing;[17] *as adv.*, **morgen, to-morrow.**
nach, *prep.* (*dat.*), after, to, [**nigh**].
nicht, *adv.*, not, [**naught**].
Onkel, *m. s. 1, uncle.*
sehr, *adv.*, very, [**sore**].
Sommer, *m. s. 1,* **summer.**
Wasser, *n. s. 1,* **water.**
Winter, *m. s. 1,* **winter.**
wohnen, *v.*, dwell, live.
Zimmer, *n. s. 1,* room, [**timber**].

NOTES.—[1] **Lehrer,** A *teacher,* see p. 28, n. 7.—[2] **Der Onkel,** MY *uncle,* see p. 28, n. 5.—[3] **gehört,** *belongs* TO: note that the noun following gehört is in the dative and that *to* is not expressed by a preposition in the German idiom.—[4] **nach** translates Eng. *to* when motion to or toward a place named is indicated.—[5] **des Vaters Zimmer:** note that the article agrees with the limiting genitive.—[6] **interessa'nt:** note the accent and account for it; see § 64.—[7] **live:** for the proper verb-form see p. 34, n. 1.—[8] **in summer:** German idiom *requires* the def. art., see p. 28, n. 9; **in:** in governs the dat. when

it means *in*, the *acc.* when it means *into;* in dem should here be written in the contracted form, im.—[9] **my father's brother,** des Vaters Bruder or der Bruder des Vaters, but *not* der Vaters Bruder, cf. n. 5.—[10] **a teacher,** see p. 28, n. 7.—[11] **is visiting,** besucht; the progressive form of the Eng. verb, with *be*, and the emphatic form, with *do*, must be expressed in German by the simple form; note this especially in interrogative forms, e. g., *are they visiting? do they visit?* must be translated besuchen sie? *visit they?*—[12] **do . . . belong to,** see n. 3 and n. 11. —[13] **shall visit,** use present tense.—[14] **to-morrow:** in translating place the Ger. equivalent immediately after the verb; see § 96. 1. —[15] **auf,** see p. 36, n. 9.—[16] **thorp** now occurs only in place-names (and derived family names), as *Althorp, Westthorp.*—[17] **morn-ing,** cf. p. 34, n. 14.

EXERCISE V e.

1. Der Bruder kauft[1] ein Messer im Laden. 2. Das Wasser im Brunnen ist sehr kalt. 3. Die Flügel des Vogels sind groß. 4. Hat er einen Spiegel in dem Zimmer? 5. Das Feuer im Ofen ist sehr heiß. 6. Die Fenster im Zimmer der Mutter[2] sind groß. 7. Das Kloster ist nicht weit vom Dörfchen. 8. Die Gebäude des Klosters sind nicht groß, aber sie sind sehr schön. 9. Des Lehrers Bruder hat einen Laden im Dörfchen. 10. Der Schneider macht einen Mantel für das Fräulein. 11. Der Schneider wohnt nicht weit vom Dorfbrunnen. 12. Die Vögel sind nur im Sommer hier.

EXERCISE V f.

1. The knife and the apples belong to[3] my brother. 2. Birds[4] have wings. 3. Mother's[5] room is cold; she is making[6] a fire in the stove. 4. The windows in my uncle's store are large. 5. The tailor lives not very far from here. 6. My father is buying a stove for my brother's room. 7. Has he a stove and a mirror in the room? 8. I am going to[7] father's store to-morrow. 9. The tailor is making cloaks for the young ladies. 10. The convent is in the mountains, not far from the little village. 11. We shall buy[8] a mirror to-morrow[9] for mother's room. 12. The life of birds is very interesting.

VOCABULARY.

Brunnen, *m. s. 1*, well, spring, [-**bourn**, -**burn**].[10]
Dorfbrunnen, *m. s. 1*, village-well.
Fenster, *n. s. 1*, window.
Feuer, *n. s. 1*, **fire**.
Flügel, *m. s. 1*, wing.
für, *prep.* (*acc.*), **for**.
kaufen, *v.*, **buy**.
Laden, *m. s. 1* (*pl.* ä), store, shop.
machen, *v.*, **make**.
Mantel, *m. s. 1* (ä), cloak, **mantle**.
Messer, *n. s. 1*, knife.
nur, *adv.*, only.
Ofen, *m. s. 1* (*pl.* Ö), stove, [**oven**].
Schneider, *m. s. 1*, tailor.
schön, *adj.*, beautiful.
Spiegel, *m. s. 1*, mirror, looking-glass.
Vogel, *m. s. 1* (*pl.* ö), bird, [**fowl**].
von, *prep.* (*dat.*), from, of.
weit, *adj.*, **wide**, broad, far.

NOTES.—[1] **kauft**, *is buying*, see Ex. V d, n. 11.—[2] **der Mutter**, MY *mother's*, see p. 28, n. 5, and Ex. V c, n. 5.—[3] **belong to**, see Ex. V c, n. 3.—[4] **birds**, the German idiom uses the def. art.—[5] **Mother's**, see n. 2.—[6] **is making**, see Ex. V d, n. 11.—[7] **to**, see Ex. V c, n. 4.—[8] **shall buy**, use present tense.—[9] **to-morrow**, see Ex. V d, n. 14.—[10] **-bourn, -burn**, this word, meaning 'brook', 'rivulet', now occurs only in proper names (and derived family names), as *Bannockburn*, *Blackburn*.

EXERCISE VI c.

1. Der Onkel des Mädchens ist Maler. 2. Er hat ein Häuschen im Gebirge und wohnt im Sommer dort. 3. Wir haben einen Garten auf dem Hügel. 4. Die Töchter des Onkels sind in einem Kloster. 5. Die Schüler gehen heute mit dem Lehrer ins Gebirge. 6. Der Gärtner hat ein Häuschen und einen Garten auf dem Hügel. 7. Kennen Sie den Vater der Mädchen? 8. Nein; ich kenne die Mädchen ein wenig, aber ich kenne den Vater gar nicht. 9. Ich komme bald in den Garten; es ist heute sehr schön dort. 10. Wer wohnt im Häuschen auf dem Hügel? 11. Zwei Maler wohnen im Sommer dort. 12. Wir kennen die Maler sehr gut; sie sind Brüder des Lehrers.

EXERCISE VI d.

1. The teachers have cottages in the mountains. 2. The hills and gardens are very beautiful in summer. 3. The gardener's cottage has only two rooms. 4. I know the girl very well and I also[1] know the father a little. 5. Are your uncle's daughters in[2] the garden or on[2] the hill? 6. That's the gardener's daughter; she is looking for[3] her brothers. 7. The painter has a cottage and a garden in the little village. 8. The pupils are in the garden with the teachers. 9. The girls will visit[4] the gardener's cottage to-day.[5] 10. The tailor is making a cloak for his daughter. 11. The girl's brother is looking for birds in the garden. 12. The teacher's two daughters are in convents.

VOCABULARY.

auch, *adv.*, also, too, [**eke**].
bald, *adv.*, soon.
dort, *adv.*, yonder, there.
gar, *adv.*, quite, altogether; gar nicht, not at all.
Garten, *m. s. 1* (*pl.* ä), **garden.**
Gärtner, *m. s. 1*, **gardener.**
gut, *adj.*, **good**; *as adv.*, well.
Häuschen, *n. s. 1*, little **house**, cottage.
heute, *adv.*, to-day.
Hügel, *m. s. 1*, **hill.**
kennen, *v.*, know, [**ken**].
kommen, *v.*, **come.**
Mädchen, *n. s. 1*, girl, **maid-en.**
Maler, *m. s. 1*, painter.
mit, *prep.* (*dat.*), with.
nein, *adv.*, no, [**none**].
Schüler, *m. s. 1*, *scholar*, pupil.
Sie, *pron.*, you; sie, **she**, they.
suchen, *v.*, **seek**, look for.
Tochter, *f. s. 1* (*pl.* ö), **daughter.**
wenig, *adj.*, little; ein wenig, a little.
wer, *pron.* (*inter.*), who.
zwei, *num.*, **two.**

NOTES.—[1] **also**: auch must follow the verb in Ger.; see § 96.—[2] **in, on**, with what case? see p. 36, n. 9.—[3] **for**, do not translate; *look for* = *seek* = suchen.—[4] **will visit**, use present.—[5] **to-day**, put heute immediately after verb.

EXERCISE VI e.

1. Das Zimmer hat zwei Fenster, aber sie sind sehr klein. 2. Kennen sie den Eigentümer des Häuschens? 3. Nein, er ist ein Spanier und er wohnt nicht mehr hier. 4. Der Vater kennt ihn[1] aber sehr gut; er hat die Schlüssel des Häuschens. 5. Das Wetter ist heute sehr heiß; der Regen kommt bald. 6. Sind die Äpfel im Garten reif? 7. Der Jäger geht morgen ins Gebirge. 8. Das Kindchen sucht Veilchen im Garten. 9. Ich schreibe oft an den Onkel und die Brüder. 10. Wer sind die Kindchen am Fenster des Häuschens? 11. Das sind die Kindchen des Gärtners und des Jägers.

EXERCISE VI f.

1. The key is in the box in mother's room. 2. The gardener's little children are looking for apples. 3. The apples are not good; they are not ripe. 4. We write often to[2] father and mother. 5. The violets in my uncle's garden are small, but very beautiful. 6. Is your[3] uncle a brother of your father or your mother? 7. My father and my uncle are brothers. 8. We have rain often in the mountains. 9. The hunters live in the mountains in summer and also in winter. 10. The weather here is hot in summer and cold in winter. 11. The little child is on the hill with the gardener's daughter.

VOCABULARY.

an, *prep.* (*dat and acc.*),[2] **on, by, at.**
das, *pron.* (*dem.*), **that.**
Eigentümer, *m. s. 1,* **own-er.**
Jäger, *m. s. 1,* hunter.
Kindchen, *n. s. 1,* little child.
klein, *adj.*, small, little.
mehr, *adj.*, **more**; nicht mehr, no longer.
oft, *adv.*, **oft-en.**
Regen, *m. s. 1,* **rain.**
reif, *adj.*, **ripe.**
Schlüssel, *m. s. 1,* key.
schreiben, *v.*, write, [*scribe*, *scrib*-ble].
Spanier, *m. s. 1,* Spaniard.
Veilchen, *n. s. 1, violet.*
Wetter, *n. s. 1,* **weather.**

NOTES.—[1] **ihn,** *him.*—[2] **to, an,** see p. 36, n. 9.—[3] **your,** dein.

Strong Nouns: Second Class.

EXERCISE VII c.

1. Ich gehe morgen nach der Stadt und kaufe einen Hut und ein Paar[1] Schuhe. 2. Am Tage[2] ist die Luft sehr warm, aber die Nächte sind noch immer[3] kalt. 3. Morgen ist der Anfang des Monats, und wir haben nur noch zwei Monate im Jahre. 4. Kennen Sie den Arzt? Er wohnt am[4] Flusse, nicht weit vom Stadtpark. 5. Der Tisch ist an[5] der Wand, und die Stühle sind an den Fenstern. 6. Im Herbste sind die Bäume im Park sehr schön. 7. Der Sohn des Lehrers ist Arzt und wohnt in der Stadt. 8. Im Sommer haben wir einen Kahn auf[4] dem Fluß. 9. Wir sind nun einen Monat[6] im Gebirge; morgen kommen auch der Vater und die Mutter. 10. Auf dem Tisch ist ein Teller mit allerlei Früchten aus dem Garten. 11. Des Onkels Hut liegt auf einem Stuhl im Garten.

EXERCISE VII d.

[Cf. Reading Lesson, p. 40.]

1. We have now been[7] two months in the city. 2. The cottage is in a park by[8] the river. 3. My brother has a boat and to-morrow we shall go on[9] the river. 4. The cottage has five rooms; my brother and I have a room with two windows. 5. In the room we[10] have a table, a mirror, and five chairs. 6. We have also a stove, for[11] the nights and mornings are cold in the autumn. 7. The beginning of autumn is already here; the apples in my uncle's garden are ripe. 8. The tailor is buying hats and shoes for his sons. 9. The boxes are lying on the table and chairs in my brother's room. 10. In the cities one sees[12] all sorts of[13] buildings. 11. The mothers of the pupils are coming to the park to-day.

VOCABULARY.

al'lerlei', *adj.*, **all sorts of.**
An'fang, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), beginning.
Arzt, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* Ä), physician.
aus, *prep.* (*dat.*), **from, out of.**
denn, *conj.*, for.
Fluß, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* -üsse), river.
Frucht, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), *fruit.*
fünf, *num.*, **five.**
Herbst, *m. s. 2*, autumn, [**harvest**].
Hut, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), hat, [**hood**].
Kahn, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), boat, row-boat.
liegen, *v.*, **lie,** be situated.
Luft, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), air.
man, *pron.* (*indef.*), one, [**man**].
noch, *adv.*, yet, still (of time).
nun, *adv.*, now, well.
Paar, *n. s. 2*, *pair;* ein paar, **a few.**
Park, *m. s. 2*, *park.*
schon, *adv.*, already.
Schuh, *m. s. 2*, **shoe.**
Sohn, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ö), **son.**
Stadt, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), city.
Stuhl, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), chair, [**stool**].
Teller, *m. s. 1*, plate.
Tisch, *m. s. 2*, table, [**dish**].
Wand, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), wall.
warm, *adj.*, **warm.**

NOTES.—[1] **ein Paar** is not followed by a preposition or by the genitive, but by the noun limited in apposition; see § 246, 1, *a.*—[2] **am Tage,** *in the daytime.*—[3] **noch immer,** see p. 41, n. 7.—[4] **am,** see p. 41, n. 5.—[5] **an,** *by.*—[6] **einen Monat,** acc. of measure of time.—[7] **we have been,** wir sind, see p. 41, n. 1.—[8] **by,** an; case? p. 36, n. 9.—[9] **on,** auf with acc.—[10] **we,** position? § 87.—[11] **for,** denn; position of subject? § 87. 3.—[12] **sees,** sieht; see p. 41, n. 4.—[13] **of,** do not transl. by preposition.

EXERCISE VII e.

1. Er steht am Fenster mit dem Hut in der Hand.[1] 2. Hat das Mädchen einen Ring am Finger? 3. Der Jüngling im Kahn ist ein Freund des Bruders. 4. Das Fräulein hat des Gärtners Kindchen in den Armen. 5. Das Schiff liegt im Hafen; der Vater kennt den Kapitän sehr gut. 6. Ich habe heute einen Brief von der Mutter; in ein paar Tagen kommt sie nach

der Stadt. 7. Hier im Gebirge sieht man allerlei Tiere. 8. Die Mädchen gehen Arm[2] in Arm durch den Park. 9. Morgen besuchen wir Freunde in der Stadt. 10. Die Handschuhe liegen auf dem Tisch am Fenster. 11. Der Hafen der Stadt[3] New York ist groß und sehr schön.

EXERCISE VII f.

1. The rings are in a box in mother's room. 2. I am going to write[4] letters to-day to friends in the city. 3. In the little village we always have a horse and a couple of[5] dogs. 4. Has the young lady rings on her fingers? 5. The captain of the ship is a friend of my father. 6. My brother has his hat on his[6] head and his gloves in his hand. 7. We are going to the mountains to-morrow; father and mother are coming in a few days. 8. In the park[7] one sees all sorts of birds and beasts. 9. The young man is standing by the window with his hands on a chair. 10. Is the dog going with the girls to the park? 11. To-day or to-morrow we shall visit the war-ships in the harbor.

VOCABULARY.

Arm, *m. s. 2*, **arm.**
Brief, *m. s. 2*, letter, [*brief*].
durch, *prep.* (*acc.*), **through.**
Finger, *m. s. 1*, **finger.**
Freund, *m. s. 2*, **friend.**
Hafen, *m. s. 1*, harbor, [**haven**].
Hand, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), **hand.**
Handschuh, *m. s. 2*, glove.
Hund, *m. s. 2*, dog, [**hound**].
Jüngling, *m. s. 2*, **young** man, youth.
Kapitän', *m. s. 2*, *captain.*
Kopf, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ö), head, [**cup**].
Krieg, *m. s. 2*, war.
Kriegsschiff, *n. s. 2*, war-**ship**, man-of-war.
Pferd, *n. s. 2*, horse, [*palfrey*].
Ring, *m. s. 2*, **ring.**
Schiff, *n. s. 2*, **ship.**
stehen, *v.*, **stand.**
Tier, *n. s. 2*, animal, beast, [**deer**].
Tiergarten, *m. s. 1* (*pl.* ä), zoological **garden**, park.

NOTES.—[1] **der Hand**, HIS *hand*, see p. 28, n. 5.—[2] **Arm** is here in the accusative absolute; see § 267.—[3] **Stadt N. Y.**: note that *of* is

not expressed by a preposition in the Ger. idiom, New York being in apposition with Stadt and hence in the same case.—[4] **am going to write** = *shall write*, to be transl. by present; with this periphrastic form of the future cf. similar forms of the pres., see Ex. V d, n. 11 —[5] **a couple of,** ein paar.—[6] **his,** use def. art., see p. 28, n. 5.—[7] **park,** here Tiergarten.

EXERCISE VIII c.

1. Die Freunde haben Plätze für uns auf der Bank unter den Bäumen. 2. Die Magd hat einen Brief für den Vater in der Hand. 3. Kaufen Sie Billete[1] zum Konzert heute abend? 4. Nein, ich gehe nicht ins Konzert; ich besuche einen Freund. 5. Vom Anfang des Sommers bis zum Schlusse des Herbstes wohnen wir in einem Häuschen am Fluß. 6. In ein paar Augenblicken kommt der König durch den Park. 7. Setzen wir uns[2] auf die Bank am Thore; hier sieht man gut. 8. Zum Glück sind noch Plätze da für uns und die Freunde. 9. Der Ring ist schön und auch nicht zu teuer; man kauft immer billig hier in der Stadt.

EXERCISE VIII d

1. Is the king coming to the city to-day or to-morrow? 2. He always comes[3] at the close of summer, doesn't he?[4] 3. The maid is going to the park with the little children. 4. The air is very hot in the concert-hall;[5] I am going to[6] the window for a moment. 5. At the close of the concert let us go[7] to the park; the air is always fresh and cool there in the evening. 6. Shall you buy a seat for to-morrow evening also? 7. Yes; the concerts are very fine[8] and the tickets are not dear. 8. The tickets are cheap enough, I presume,[9] but I am too poor. 9. Have you two seats? I will gladly come along,[10] for I am always rich at the beginning of the month.

VOCABULARY.

Abend, *m. s. 2*, **even**-ing.
arm, *adj.*, poor.
Au'genblick, *m. s. 2*, **mo**ment.
Bank, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), **bench**
Billet', *n. s. 2* (*pl.* -tte), ticket.
billig, *adj.*, cheap.

bis, *prep.* (*acc.*), up to, until; bis zu, until.
genug', *adj.* (*indecl.*), **enough.**
gern, *adv.*, willingly, gladly.
Glück, *n. s.* (*no plural*), **luck,** fortune; zum Glück, luckily.
ja, *adv.*, yes.
König, *m. s. 2*, **king.**
Konzert', *n. s. 2, concert.*
kühl, *adj.*, **cool.**
Magd, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), **maid, maid**-servant.
Platz, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), *place*, seat.
reich, *adj.*, **rich.**
Saal, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* Säle), hall.
Schluß, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* Schlüsse), end, close.
setzen, *v.*, **set, seat,** put.
teuer, *adj.*, **dear,** expensive.
Thor, *n. s. 2*, gate, [door].
uns, *pron.* (*dat. and acc.*), **us.**
unter, *prep.* (*dat. and acc.*), **under,** among.
wahr, *adj.*, true.
zu, *prep.* (*dat.*), **to,** at, for; *as adv.*, **too.**

NOTES.—[1] **Billete,** see p. 43, n. 13.—[2] **setzen wir uns,** see p. 43, n. 4.—[3] **comes** must immediately follow subject, see § 96.—[4] **doesn't he,** nicht wahr? see p. 43, n. 2.—[5] **concert-hall,** Konzertsaal; gender of compound? see § 75, 3.—[6] **to,** an; case? see p. 36, n. 9.—[7] **let us go,** gehen wir, cf. p. 43, n. 4.—[8] **fine,** schön.—[9] **I presume,** wohl, to follow sind. —[10] **will gladly come along,** komme gern mit.

EXERCISE VIII 6.

1. Der Vater kauft für den Sohn einen Rock, einen Hut und ein Paar Schuhe. 2. Für die Tochter kauft er einen Mantel und ein Paar Handschuhe. 3. Der Dieb hat des Fräuleins Ringe und Goldstücke in der Hand. 4. Das Kindchen spielt im Garten; es hat einen Ball und ein Schaukelpferd. 5. Des Mädchens Füße sind zu groß für die Schuhe der Mutter. 6. Man hat allerlei Besorgnisse und Hindernisse im Leben. 7. Der Briefträger hat Briefe für den Onkel und auch für uns. 8. Im Frühling und im Herbst spielen die Schüler gern[1] Fußball. 9. Ich habe ein Zimmer mit einem Tisch, ein paar Stühlen und einem Schaukelstuhl. 10. Wir haben Gäste heute abend; sie gehen mit[2] ins Konzert.

EXERCISE VIII f.

1. The gloves are too small for my hands. 2. The letter-carrier is coming through the garden-gate; he probably[3] has a letter for father. 3. The letter is from[4] Boston; Uncle Karl[5] and his daughters will visit us in a few days. 4. The captain of the war-ship is my father's guest this evening. 5. The maid is in the garden with the little children and the dogs. 6. The thief has the ring on[6] his finger; the gold-piece is still lying[7] in the box. 7. My brother is going to play[8] football in the park this afternoon. 8. Little children like to play[9] with balls and rocking-horses. 9. We are going to make an excursion to the mountains to morrow[10]; our guests are going along[2]. 10. My friend's room is small; he has not room[11] for a table or a rocking-chair. 11. The storm is coming soon; the boats are rocking on[12] the river.

VOCABULARY.

Ausflug, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), excursion, [**out-fly**-ing, -**flight**].
Ball, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), **ball.**
Besorgnis, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* -nisse), care, anxiety, [-**sorrow**].
Briefträger, *m. s. 1*, letter-carrier.
Dieb, *m. s. 2*, **thief.**
früh, *adj.*, early.
Frühling, *m. s. 2*, spring.
Fuß, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), **foot.**
Gartenthor, *n. s. 2*, **garden**-gate, [-**door**].
Gast, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), **guest.**
Goldstück, *n. s. 2*, **gold**-piece.
Hindernis, *n. s. 2* (*pl.* -nisse), **hindr**-ance, difficulty.
Nachmittag, *m. s. 2*, afternoon, [-**midday**].
Rock, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ö), coat; (of women's apparel), skirt.
schaukeln, *v.*, swing, rock.
Schaukelpferd, *n. s. 2*, rocking-horse.
Schaukelstuhl, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), rocking-chair, [-**stool**].
spielen, *v.*, play.
Sturm, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), **storm.**

NOTES.—[1] **spielen gern**, play gladly, i. e., *like to play;* **gern** fre quently has this meaning in connection with a verb.—[2] **mit**, *along.*—

[3] **probably,** wohl, to follow the verb; § 96.—[4] **from,** aus.—[5] **Uncle Karl** (Charles), Onkel Karl.—[6] **on,** an with dat.—[7] **is still lying** = *lies still* (noch).—[8] **is going to play,** spielt, *cf.* Ex. VII f, n. 4.—[9] **like to play,** see n. 1.—[10] **to-morrow** in Ger. should immediately follow verb.—[11] **room,** Platz, *place.*—[12] **on,** auf with dat.

Strong Nouns: Third Class.

EXERCISE IX c.

1. Der Vater des Fräuleins ist Kaufmann[1] in der Stadt und wohl sehr reich. 2. Kennen sie den Mann im Garten dort? 3. Ja, das ist der Eigentümer des Hauses, aber er wohnt nur ein paar Monate im Sommer hier. 4. In des Bruders Buche sind allerlei Bilder aus dem Altertum.[2] 5. Die Kinder gehen nicht mit durch den Wald; sie sind zu klein. 6. Wir haben ein Häuschen auf dem Lande[3] und wohnen fünf Monate des Jahres dort. 7. Der Mann hat wohl wenig Geist; er ist kein[4] Freund von Büchern. 8. Das Dorf liegt in einem Thale und oben auf dem Berge[5] steht das Schloß eines Edelmanns. 9. Der Vater bringt Lehrbücher[6] für uns und Bilderbücher für die Kinder. 10. Für Leute von Geist und Gemüt ist das Leben auf dem Lande sehr interessant.

EXERCISE IX d.

[Cf. Reading Lesson, p. 44.]

1. We have now been[7] in the country a month; we have a cottage on the river not far from my uncle's house. 2. My uncle is a physician, and a man of intelligence and wealth. 3. He has five children, a son and four daughters. 4. The son is a merchant in the city and does not live with[8] his father. 5. Two of the daughters are already young ladies, two are still children. 6. They are very kind to[9] us; they visit us daily and often[10] bring along a couple of books. 7. Here in the valley the summer-days[11] are pretty hot, but the nights are always cool. 8. In the evening one sees[12] the people of the village on the river in all sorts of boats. 9. Yesterday we were[13] in the moun-

tains and visited[14] a castle; noblemen no longer live[15] there. 10. The pictures and antiquities[2] in the rooms of the castle are of course very interesting.

VOCABULARY.

NOTE.—Since *all* nouns of the third class have umlaut in the plural, if possible, the modification of the vowel does not need to be specially indicated for words of that class.

bei, *prep.* (*dat.*), **by**, at, with, at the house of.
Berg,[5] *m. s. 2*, mountain, [**barrow**].
Bild, *n. s. 3*, picture.
bringen, *v.*, **bring**.
Buch, *n. s. 3*, **book**.
Dorf, *n. s. 3*, village, [**-thorp**].[16]
Edelmann, *m. s. 3*,[1] **noble-man**.
freundlich, *adj.*, **friendly**, kind.
gegen, *prep.* (*acc.*), towards, to, against, [a-**gain**].
Geist, *m. s. 3*, intelligence, spirit, **ghost**.
Gemüt, *n. s. 3*, feeling, soul.
gestern, *adv.*, **yester-day**.
Kaufmann, *m. s. 3*,[1] **mer-chant**, [**chapman**].
kein, *adj.*, no, not a, none.
Kind, *n. s. 3*, child.
Land, *n. s. 2–3*,[17] **land**, country.
Lehrbuch, *n. s. 3*, **text-book**.[6]
Leute, *pl. only*, people.
natürlich, *adv.*, *naturally*, of course.
oben, *adv.*, ab-**ove**.
Schloß, *n. s. 3* (*pl.* -öſſ-), castle.
täglich, *adj.*, *adv.*, **daily**.
Thal, *n. s. 3*, valley, **dale**.
Vermögen, *n. s. 1*, property, wealth.
vier, *num.*, **four**.
Wald, *m. s. 3*, forest, [**wold**].
ziemlich, *adv.*, pretty, tolerably.

NOTES.—[1] **Kaufmann** and some other compounds of **Mann** have two plurals, one in -männer, the other in -leute, the former referring to particular individuals, the latter being used collectively and without reference to sex; thus, (die Brüder ſind) Kaufmänner, *merchants, tradesmen;* (eine Stadt der Arbeiter und) Kaufleute, *tradespeople.* **Edelmann** has regularly -leute, the pl. -männer being very unusual.—[2] **Altertum** is applied both to ancient time and to the objects preserved therefrom; just so *antiquity*, cf. Ex. IX d, 10.—[3] **auf dem**

Lande, see p. 46, n. 5.—[4] **kein** = nicht ein; **von Büchern**, see p. 46, n. 3. —[5] From **Berg** is formed the collective Gebirge, see p. 34, n. 4. *Berg* is sometimes used as an abridgment of *iceberg* (borrowed from Ger. or Scand.) with equivalent meaning.—[6] **Lehrbücher** are *teaching-books* (i. e., text-books), the first part of the compound being the stem of the verb lehren, *to teach*.—[7] **have now been**, sind nun, see p. 41, n. 1.—[8] **with**, bei, *not* mit; bei is used exactly as Fr. *chez* in this sense.—[9] **to**, gegen.—[10] **often** must follow verb in Ger.—[11] **summer-days**: transl. by a compound formed exactly as in Eng., but written as one word.—[12] **sees**, sieht; see p. 41, n. 4.—[13] **were**, waren; pret. 1. and 3. pers. pl. of sein; see § 171.—[14] **visited**, besuchten; pret. 1. and 3. pers. pl. of besuchen; see § 174.—[15] **noblemen . . . live**: nothing must separate subject and verb; see § 96.—[16] **-thorp**, see Ex. V c, d, n. 16.—[17] **land**, see p. 46, n. 10.

EXERCISE IX e.

1. Die Dächer der Häuschen im Dorfe sind sehr niedrig. 2. Die Vögel bauen Nester in den Bäumen. 3. Die Kinder haben einen Wagen mit zwei Rädern. 4. Die Ufer des Flusses sind sehr schön im Herbste. 5. Die Mutter kauft ein Kleid und einen Hut für die Tochter. 6. Die Leute im Dorfe sind meistens arm; sie haben Häuschen und Gärten, aber wenig Geld. 7. Der Bruder kommt morgen auf das Land[1] und bringt das Fahrrad mit.[2] 8. Die fünf Eier sind schon lange im Neste; bald kommen Vögelchen aus den Eiern. 9. Die Mädchen haben meistens Bänder sehr gern.[3] 10. Das Tuch ist wohl gut, aber der Preis ist zu hoch; ich kaufe Kleider sehr billig in der Stadt.

EXERCISE IX f.

1. We are building a cottage in the country. 2. The castles on the banks of the river are very interesting. 3. The roads here in the country are pretty good; I shall soon buy[4] a bicycle. 4. The birds are building a nest under the roof of the cottage. 5. The cloth is dear and not very good; I shall go to[5] a tailor in the city. 6. Let us go[6] to the concert this evening[7]; have you money for the tickets? 7. The prices are too high, for[8] the concerts

are not especially good. 8. The nest is no longer[9] in the tree, and the eggs are lying on the ground. 9. The girls are shopping to-day[10]; they are buying gloves and ribbons. 10. We are going[14] to the forest; there is[11] still a place in the carriage, pray[12] come along.

VOCABULARY.

Band, *n. s. 2–3*,[13] **band, bond**, ribbon.
bauen, *v.*, build.
besonders, *adv.*, especially.
Dach, *n. s. 3*, roof, [**thatch**].
Ei, *n. s. 3*, **egg**.
Ein'kauf, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* äu), purchase.
fahren, *v.*, go,[14] [**fare**].
Fahrrad, *n. s. 3*, bicycle.
Geld, *n. s. 3*, money, [**yield**].
hoch, *adj.*, **high**.
Kleid, *n. s. 3*, dress; *pl.* **cloth**-es.
lange, *adv.*, **long**, for a long time.
meistens, *adv.*, **most**-ly.
Nest, *n. s. 3*, **nest**.
niedrig, *adj.*, low, [**nether-y**].
Preis, *m. s. 2*, *price*.
Rad, *n. s. 3*, wheel.
Tuch, *n. s. 2–3*,[15] cloth, [**duck**].
Ufer, *n. s. 1*, bank, shore.
Wagen, *m. s. 1*, **wagon**, carriage.
Weg, *m. s. 2*, **way**, road.

NOTES.—[1] **auf das Land** means *to the country* from the city and in contrast with it. Ins Land means *into the country* taken as a whole (i. e., as a political division), including the cities. Cf. with auf dem Land, see p. 46, n. 5.—[2] **mit**, along.—[3] **haben . . . gern**, *be fond of, like;* cf. Ex. VIII e, n. 1.—[4] **shall soon buy**, kaufe bald.—[5] **to**, zu.—[6] **let us go**, gehen wir; cf. p. 43, n. 4.—[7] **this evening** should precede *to the concert* in Ger., see § 96. 1.—[8] **for** is a conj. here and therefore not to be transl. by für.—[9] **no longer**, nicht mehr.—[10] **are shopping to-day**, machen heute Einkäufe.—[11] **there is**, see p. 43, n. 18.—[12] **pray**, see p. 43, n. 14.—[13] **Bande** and **Bänder**, see § 90. 2.—[14] **fahren** = *to go, to ride in a conveyance* (wagon, train, boat); gehen = *to go*, in general; specifically, *to walk*.—[15] **Tücher**, *pieces of cloth*, shawls; also in compounds, as Handtücher, *towels;* but **Tuche**, *cloths, kinds of cloth*.

EXERCISE X c.

1. Die Arbeiter gehen sehr früh am Morgen auf das Feld.[1] 2. In den Dörfern sind die Häuschen aus[2] Holz und die Dächer

meistens aus Stroh. 3. Durch die Blätter der Bäume sieht man den Mond hoch am[3] Himmel. 4. Es ist schon dunkel; ich mache Licht im Zimmer. 5. Es wird[4] kalt hier im Walde; gehen wir nach Hause.[5] 6. Sie kennen den Weg durch die Felder, nicht wahr?[6] 7. O, ja; der Weg am Fluß ist aber[7] schön und nicht sehr lang. 8. Wer wohnt im Häuschen dort am Rande des Holzes?[8] 9. Dort wohnt des Vaters Gärtner mit Weib und Kindern. 10. Gehen wir schnell, sonst kommen wir zu spät; die Mutter ist wohl[9] schon zu Hause.[5]

EXERCISE X d.

1. I shall come home[5] late this evening; I am going to visit a friend in the city. 2. The air is pretty clear to-night; one sees the lights of the city very well. 3. How late is it now?[10] Let us go home early, for[11] to-morrow we make an excursion to the country.[12] 4. I do not know; perhaps we shall have rain to-morrow,[13] and then there will be no[14] excursion. 5. One sees spooks only in the night, not by[15] day. 6. What have you in your hand? Those are violets, are they not?[16] 7. The beginning of spring is here; the trees and grass are already becoming green. 8. I see the apples among[17] the leaves; they are large and ripe. 9. The children are standing on[18] the edge of the shore; have we two more[19] seats in the boat? 10. Mother is not at home[5] to-day; she is visiting her brother in the country.

VOCABULARY.

Ar'beiter, *m. s. 1*, working-man.
Blatt, *n. s. 3*, leaf, [**blade**].
dann, *adv.*, **then.**
dunkel, *adj.*, dark.
Feld, *n. s. 3*, **field.**
Gespenst', *n. s. 3*, ghost, spook.
Gras, *n. s. 3*, **grass.**
grün, *adj.*, **green.**
Himmel, *m. s. 1*, heaven, sky.
Holz, *n. s. 3*, wood, forest, [**holt**].
jetzt, *adv.*, now, [**yet**].
klar, *adj.*, *clear.*
lang, *adj.*, **long.**
Licht, *n. s. 3*,[20] **light.**

Mond, *m. s. 2*, **moon.**
Rand, *m. s. 3*, edge, border, [**rand**].
schnell, *adj.*, swift, quick; *as adv.*, quickly, fast.
sonst, *adv.*, else, otherwise.
spät, *adv., adj.*, late.
Stroh, *n. s.* (*no pl.*), **straw.**
vielleicht', *adv.*, perhaps.
Weib, *n. s. 3*, woman, **wife.**
werden, *v.*, become; **es wird,** it is becoming *or* getting.
wie, *adv.*, how, as, [**why**].
wissen, *v.*, know; **ich weiß,** I know, [to **wit**].
zwischen, *prep.* (*dat. and acc.*), be-**tween,** among.

NOTES.—[1] **auf das Feld,** *to the field,* without reference to any particular field; cf. Ex. IXe, n. 1.—[2] **aus,** *of.*—[3] **am,** *in the.*—[4] **es wird,** see p. 48, n. 4.—[5] **nach Hause** means *home* in the sense of *homeward,* **zu Hause** in the sense of *at home.*—[6] **nicht wahr,** *do you not?* see p. 43, n. 2.—[7] **aber** following one or more words of its clause is usually = *however.*—[8] **Holzes,** see p. 48, n. 6.—[9] **wohl,** *probably.*—[10] **now,** jetzt.—[11] **for,** see Ex. IX f, n. 8.—[12] **to the country,** see Ex. IX e, n. 1.—[13] transl. *perhaps have we to-morrow rain.*—[14] **then . . . no,** dann ist kein.—[15] **by,** am.—[16] **are they not,** nicht wahr, see p. 43, n. 2.—[17] **among,** zwischen with dat., see p. 36, n. 9.—[18] **on,** an.—[19] **two more,** noch zwei.—[20] **Licht,** *pl.* Lichte, *candles,* see § 276, *a.*

EXERCISE X e.

1. Sind die Gläser auf dem Tische? 2. Haben sie Eier und Schinken im Hause? 3. Der Schinken ist ziemlich gut, aber die Eier sind nicht frisch. 4. Kennst du die Worte des Liedes? 5. Das ist ein Volkslied[1] des Vaterlands. 6. Haben Sie Gras und Wasser für die Pferde? 7. Der Reichtum bringt nicht immer Glück. 8. Er ist immer ein Freund des Volkes. 9. Am Schluß des Tages nehmen wir ein Bad im Flusse. 10. Die Dinge hier im Schlosse gehören dem Edelmann. 11. Mit dem Messer mache ich ein paar Löcher in[2] den Hut. 12. Die Lieder der Völker sind oft sehr interessant.

EXERCISE X f.

1. The word is not in the dictionary. 2. The young lady sings folk-songs very well.[3] 3. The things in my brother's room belong to the man-of-the-house.[4] 4. A king

does not always seek[5] the happiness of his[6] people. 5. We take a bath in the sea daily, but to-day the water is too cold. 6. The words[7] of the song are simple and beautiful. 7. Our friends are seeking their fortune in the west. 8. A part of the country lies on the sea. 9. There is[8] a hole in my shoe; I shall go to the[9] shoemaker to-morrow. 10. The water in the glasses is not fresh; how long has it been standing[10] on the table? 11. From the towers of the castle one looks over[11] forest and river as far as the mountains.

VOCABULARY.

Bad, *n. s. 3*, **bath.**
Ding, *n. s. 2*, **thing.**
einfach, *adj.*, simple.
Glas, *n. s. 3*, **glass.**
Lied, *n. s. 3*, song.
Loch, *n. s. 3*, hole, [**lock**].
Meer, *n. s. 2*, sea, [**mere**].
nehmen, *v.*, take.
Reichtum, *m. s. 3*, **rich**-es.
Schinken, *m. s. 1*, ham.
Schuhmacher, *m. s. 1*, **shoe-maker.**
singen, *v.*, **sing.**
Teil, *m. s. 2*, part, [**deal**]; *n. s. 2*, share.
Turm, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), tower.
Vaterland, *n. s.* (*no plural*), **fatherland**, native country.
Volk, *n. s. 3*, **folk**, people, nation.
Westen, *m. s. 1*, **west.**
Wirt, *m. s. 2*, landlord, man-of-the-house, host.
Wort, *n. s. 2–3*,[7] **word.**
Wörterbuch, *n. s. 3*, dictionary.

NOTES.—[1] **Volkslied**, *folk-song, popular song.*—[2] **in**, note that the prep. governs acc. here, the literal meaning being 'into.'—[3] **well**, gut.—[4] man-of-the-house; words thus joined by hyphens are to be translated in German as one word.—[5] **does . . . seek**; transl. *seeks not always*, cf. Ex. V d, n. 11.—[6] **his**, use def. art.—[7] **words**, Worte, the reference being to *connected words; single words*, as such, = Wörter; cf. the Ger. equivalent of 'dictionary.'—[8] **there is**, es ist.—[9] **to the**, zum.—[10] **has it been standing**, steht es schon.—[11] **over**, see p. 46, n. 7.

WEAK NOUNS.

EXERCISE XI c.

1. Der Knabe sucht Vogelnester in den Bäumen. 2. Ich wohne in der Familie[1] eines Kaufmanns. 3. Kennen Sie die Dame mit dem Knaben dort? 4. Das ist der Knaben Lehrerin; sie haben dreimal wöchentlich eine Sprachstunde.[2] 5. Hier in der Fremde[3] arbeiten die Frauen viel auf[4] dem Felde. 6. In einer Weltstadt[5] hört man allerlei Sprachen. 7. Die Herren sind wohl Studenten, nicht wahr? 8. Die Schwester kommt in[6] ein paar Wochen nach Hause. 9. Eine Freundin aus der Schule kommt mit. 10. Habe[7] nur Hoffnung; mit der Zeit kommt vielleicht Glück. 11. Die Menschen[8] bauen gern Luftschlösser.[9]

EXERCISE XI d.

[Cf. Reading Lesson, p. 50.]

1. People[10] here are especially kind to Americans, and I like life abroad[3] very much.[11] 2. I am living with[12] a family between the park and the river. 3. The man-of-the-house[13] is a lawyer and a friend of my uncle. 4. I have four language-lessons[2] weekly. 5. The daughter of my landlord is a teacher[14] in a girls'-school.[15] 6. She has no time free by day,[16] so I have the lessons with a man teacher.[14] 7. I learn daily ten words[17] and also a few lines of a poem. 8. I often make excursions with the family to the villages in the vicinity of the city. 9. About[18] the excursion to the mountains I wrote[19] recently in a letter to[20] father. 10. The weeks pass very quickly; soon comes the beginning of summer and the close of work for the year.

VOCABULARY.

Advokat', *m. w.*, lawyer, [*advocate*].
also, *adv.*, so, then, [**also**].
Arbeit, *f. w.*, work.
arbeiten, *v.*, work.
Dame, *f. w.*, lady, *dame.*
dreimal, *adv.*, **three** times, [-**mole**].
Fami'lie, *f. w.*, *family.*
frei, *adj.*, **free.**
Fremde, *f. w.*, foreign land.
Gedicht, *n. s. 2*, poem.
Hoffnung, *f. w.*, **hope.**
lernen, *v.*, **learn.**
Nähe, *f. w.*, vicinity, [**nigh**].
neulich, *adv.*, lately, recently, [**newly**].
Schule, *f. w.*, *school.*
Schwester, *f. w.*, **sister.**
Sprache, *f. w.*, language.
Stunde, *f. w.*, hour, lesson.
über, *prep.* (*dat. and acc.*), **over**, about, concerning.[18]
vergehen, *v.*, pass, [**for(e)go**].
viel, *pron.*, *adj.*, *adv.*, much.
Welt, *f. w.*, **world.**
Woche, *f. w.*, **week.**
wöchentlich, *adv.*, **weekly.**
zehn, *num.*, **ten.**
Zeile, *f. w.*, line.
Zeit, *f. w.*, time, [**tide**].

NOTES.—[1] **Familie**; pronounce Fa-mi'-li-e (§ 17. 2).—[2] **Sprachstunde**, see p. 51, n. 4.—[3] **in der Fremde**, *abroad.*—[4] **auf**, in.—[5] **Weltstadt**, 'world-city,' i. e., *cosmopolitan city.*—[6] **in** governs dat. when time 'when' or 'within' is expressed.—[7] **habe**, 2d. pers. sing. imperative of haben.—[8] **die Menschen**, *people;* cf. p. 52, n. 12.—[9] **Luftschlösser**, *castles-in-the-air.*—[10] **people**, die Leute.—[11] **I like very much**, ich habe . . . sehr gern.—[12] **with**, bei.—[13] **man-of-the-house**, Hausherr.—[14] **teacher**, see p. 51, n. 5.—[15] **girls'-school**, Mädchenschule.—[16] **by day**, am Tage.—[17] **words**, see Ex. X f, n. 7.—[18] **über** in the sense of *about, concerning*, always takes the acc.—[19] **I wrote**, see p. 52, n. 8.—[20] **to**, an den.

EXERCISE XI e.

1. Ich gehe oft in die Konzerte, aber wenig in Gesellschaft. 2. Ich habe die Musik sehr gern, die Gesellschaft gar nicht. 3. Die Liebe zur Freiheit liegt in der Natur der Menschen. 4. Die Bäume und Blumen im Park sind jetzt besonders schön. 5. Der Knabe ist ein Neffe des Lehrers, nicht wahr? 6. Die Kinder besuchen den Tiergarten sehr oft mit der Hauslehrerin.

7. Von den Tieren sehen sie die Affen immer besonders gern.[1] 8. Mit den Klavierstunden[2] geht es jetzt ziemlich gut. 9. Das Wetter ist nicht mehr so heiß und ich spiele zwei bis[3] vier Stunden täglich. 10. Nur durch Übung kommt die Fertigkeit, denn „Übung macht den Meister."[4]

EXERCISE XI f.

1. My sisters are governesses in[5] families in the country. 2. Shall you buy[6] flowers for the table this evening? 3. People of intelligence have not always love for the beauties of nature.[7] 4. The books belong to the nephew of my landlady[8]; he is a student. 5. We are going abroad[9] in a few weeks[10] and shall visit the cities of our native land. 6. Summer[11] is the time of fruits and flowers. 7. My brother's letters are too short; he writes only a few lines and says little of his life abroad.[12] 8. The daughters of the family have a piano; I do not play[13] much, for I have little time. 9. Only through practice does a[14] master learn skill. 10. The gentleman's sons are pupils in the city-schools.[15]

VOCABULARY.

Affe, *m. w.*, **ape**, monkey.
Blume, *f. w.*, flower, [**bloom**].
Fertigkeit, *f. w.*, skill, proficiency.
Freiheit, *f. w.*, **free**-dom, liberty.
Gesellschaft, *f. w.*, society, company.
Hauslehrerin, *f. w.*, governess.
Klavier, *n. s. 2*, piano.
Liebe, *f. w.*, **love**.
Meister, *m. s. 1*, ***master***.
Musik', *f. w.*, *music*.
Natur', *f. w.*, *nature*.
Neffe, *m. w.*, **nephew**.
sagen, *v.*, **say**, tell.
Schönheit, *f. w.*, **beauty**, [**sheen**-].
Übung, *f. w.*, practice, exercise.
Wirtin, *f. w.*, landlady.

NOTES.—[1] **sehen gern**, see Ex. VIII f, n. 1.—[2] **Klavierstunden**, *piano-lessons*.—[3] **bis**, *to*.—[4] What is the equivalent Eng. proverb?—[5] **in**, bei.—[6] **shall you buy**, use pres.—[7] **the beauties of nature**,

Naturschönheiten.—[8] **my landlady**, see p. 52, n. 9.—[9] **abroad**, in die Fremde.—[10] **weeks** is in the dat.; cf. Ex. XI c, n. 6.—[11] Use def. art. —[12] **abroad**, in der Fremde; cf. n. 9.—[13] **do not play**, see Ex. V d, n. 11. —[14] Use def. art. in Ger.—[15] **city-schools**, Stadtschulen.

EXERCISE XII c.

1. Es giebt jetzt eine Menge Zeitungen[1] mit allerlei Bildern. 2. In der Fremde sind die Zeitungen meistens ganz anders als bei uns. 3. Bilder sieht man überhaupt selten darin, und dann nur von Personen. 4. Über die Kleinigkeiten steht sehr wenig darin, aber viel über die Politik der Welt. 5. Hat man noch keine Nachricht von der Wahl? 6. Nachricht hat man natürlich, es ist[2] aber noch nichts gewiß. 7. Nun, wer hat den Sieg, die Demokraten oder die Republikaner? 8. Die Arbeiter stehen diesmal meistens auf der Seite der Demokraten, und sie haben wohl eine Mehrheit von fünfhundert Stimmen. 9. In der Präsidentenwahl[3] bin ich immer Demokrat, aber in den Stadtwahlen[4] stimme ich oft für die Kandidaten der Republikaner.

EXERCISE XII d.

[Cf. Colloquy, p. 52.]

1. Have you the newspapers already? They are brought[5] very early in the morning,[6] are they not? 2. We have a large number of newspapers[7] here in the city and they are mostly very cheap. 3. Do you know the candidates in the city-elections[4] this time? 4. People of intelligence are seldom on[8] the side of the majority. 5. Have you still no news from your friends abroad? 6. According to[9] the letter of yesterday they are now on the sea. 7. I am buying a great number of books; they are to be had[10] very cheap here. 8. The evening papers have little about politics,[11] but much about all sorts of trivialities. 9. Shall you vote for free-trade,[12] that is[13] for the candidate of the Democrats? 10. I shall not vote at all[14] this time; I have not yet lived[15] here long enough.[16]

VOCABULARY.

als, *conj.*, than, when, **as.**
anders, *adv.*, **other-wise,** different(ly).
darin', *adv.*, **therein,** in it, in them.
Demokrat', *m. w.*, *democrat.*
diesmal, *adv.*, **this** time, [**mole-**].
ganz, *adj.*, all, whole; *as adv.*, quite, entirely.
geben, *v.*, **give;** es giebt (*with acc.*), there is, there are.
gewiß', *adj.*, certain; *as adv.*, certainly, to be **sure.**
Handel, *m. s. 1* (*no pl.*), trade, commerce, [**handle**].
hundert, *num.*, **hundred.**
Kandidat', *m. w.*, *candidate.*
Kleinigkeit, *f. w.*, trifle, small matter, triviality.
Mehrheit, *f. w.*, majority, [**more-hood, more-ness**].
Menge, *f. w.*, mass, multitude, great number, [**many**].
Nachricht, *f. w.*, report, news, tidings.
Person', *f. w.*, *person.*
Politik', *f. w.*, *politics.*
Präsident', *m. w.*, *president.*
Republika'ner, *m. s. 1*, *republican.*
Seite, *f. w.*, **side,** page.
selten, *adj.*, rare; *as adv.*, **seldom.**
Sieg, *m. s. 2*, victory.
Stimme, *f. w.*, voice, vote.
stimmen, *v.*, vote.
überhaupt', *adv.*, in general, at large, [**over-head**].
Wahl, *f. w.*, choice, election.
Zeitung, *f. w.*, newspaper, [**tiding**].

NOTES.—[1] **Menge Zeitungen,** *large number of newspapers;* see p. 54, n. 1.—[2] **es ist,** there is.—[3] **Präsidentenwahl,** *presidential election;* the first element of the compound is the gen. sing. of Präsident, cf. § 400. 2. Such compounds are frequently equivalent to a noun and an attributive adj. in Eng.—[4] **Stadtwahlen,** *city-elections.*—[5] **they are brought,** man bringt sie; the active construction with man (indef. pron. = *one*) as subject is frequently substituted for the passive.—[6] **in the morning,** am Morgen.—[7] **large . . . newspapers,** see p. 54, n. 1.—[8] **on,** auf with the dat.—[9] **according to,** nach with the dat.—[10] **to be had,** zu haben, at end of sentence; *here* must precede *very cheap.*—[11] **about politics,** see p. 54, n. 3.—[12] **free-trade,** die Handelsfreiheit.—[13] **that is,** also.—[14] **not at all,** gar nicht, at end.—[15] **I have not yet lived,** use pres.; see p. 41, n. 1.—[16] **long enough,** position? see § 96. 1, § 424. 2.

EXERCISE XII e.

1. Die Soldaten kommen als Helden nach Hause. 2. Die Arbeiter bauen eine Kirche im Dörfchen. 3. In den Ländern des Nordens sieht man die Sonne im Winter nur ein paar Stunden täglich. 4. Vor der Thüre des Palastes steht immer ein Soldat. 5. In der Schule lernen die Kinder die Geschichte des Vaterlands. 6. Die Sache steht jetzt anders; ich gehe gewiß nicht mit.[1] 7. Ich schreibe Briefe heute morgen; es liegen Federn[2] auf dem Tische, wo ist aber die Tinte? 8. Die Helden der Nationen leben noch immer in der Geschichte. 9. Der Sprachlehrer wohnt auf der Nordseite[3] der Straße, neben[4] der Stadtkirche. 10. Das ist eine That der Freundschaft, wohl nicht[5] der Pflicht.

EXERCISE XII f.

1. That is an affair of the teacher, not of the student. 2. Animals certainly have a language, have they not?[6] 3. The streets of the city are hot in[7] summer. 4. In the north the winters are long and cold. 5. Do you know[8] the history of the castle? 6. He is writing a poem about[9] the deeds of a hero. 7. What are the duties of the president of the society? 8. The northern-lights are especially bright on winter-evenings.[10] 9. Is there[11] a church in the vicinity? There are[12] two churches between[13] the bridge and the park. 10. Are you looking for[14] pen and ink? They are on the table beside the newspapers. 11. Words[15] and deeds of friendship make much happiness in the world. 12. On[16] the streets, in the park, in the stores and churches, everywhere one now sees soldiers.

VOCABULARY.

Brücke, *f. w.*, **bridge.**
Feder, *f. w.*, pen, **feather.**
Freundschaft, *f. w.*, **friendship.**
Geschichte, *f. w.*, story, history.
Held, *m. w.*, hero.
hell, *adj.*, bright, clear, light.
Kirche, *f. w.*, **church**, [**kirk.**]
leben, *v.*, **live.**
Nation', *f. w.*, *nation.*

neben, *prep.* (*dat. and acc.*),[17] close by, beside.
Norden, *m. s. 1*, **north.**
Nordlicht, *n. s. 3*, **north**-ern [**light-s**].
Palast', *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), *palace.*
Pflicht, *f. w.*, duty, [**plight**].
Sache, *f. w.*, affair, thing, [**sake**].
Soldat', *m. w.*, *soldier.*
Sonne, *f. w.*, **sun.**
Straße, *f. w.*, *street.*
That, *f. w.*, **deed,** act.
Thür(e), *f. w.*, **door.**
Tinte, *f. w.*, *ink.*
überall', *adv.*, everywhere, [**over-all**].
vor, *prep.* (*dat. and acc.*),[17] before, [**fore**].
wo, *adv.*, where.

NOTES.—[1] **mit,** *along.*—[2] **es liegen Federn,** *there are pens lying;* cf. § 122. 3.—[3] **Nordseite,** *north side;* cf. § 400. 1.—[4] **neben,** *next door to.*—[5] **wohl nicht,** *hardly.*—[6] **have they not,** nicht wahr?—[7] **in,** im.—[8] **know,** kennen.—[9] **about,** see Ex. XI d, n. 18.—[10] **winter-evenings,** an den Winterabenden.—[11] **is there,** giebt es.—[12] **there are,** es sind; cf. § 340. 1.—[13] **zwischen** with the dat.; see p. 36, n. 9.—[14] **are . . . for,** see Ex. VI d, n. 3, and V d, n. 11.—[15] **words,** use def. art. and cf. Ex. X f, n. 7.—[16] **on,** auf with the dat.—[17] See p. 36, n. 9.

NOUNS OF THE MIXED DECLENSION.

EXERCISE XIII c.

1. Kennen Sie den Herrn am Tische dort? 2. Ich kenne ihn nur dem Namen nach; er ist ein Freund des Vetters. 3. Mein Nachbar ist Arzt und auch Professor an[1] der Universität. 4. Am Ende des Gartens stehen Bänke und Stühle. 5. Die Freunde des Staats arbeiten immer im Interesse des Friedens. 6. An den Wänden des Zimmers sieht man lauter Familienbilder.[2] 7. In der Mutter Augen sieht man die Liebe zu den Kindern. 8. Sie sind Doktor, aber nicht Arzt? Sie sind also Doktor der Philosophie, nicht der Medizin. 9. Man redet viel[3] vom Frieden, doch haben wir noch immer Krieg. 10. Die Bibliothek des Professors besteht hauptsächlich aus Büchern über die Litteratur und Kunst des Altertums.

EXERCISE XIII d.

[Cf. Reading Lesson, p. 55.]

1. I am making acquaintances very rapidly here in the city. 2. Last evening I was at supper[4] with[5] a neighbor of my cousin. 3. I visited the city-library[6] recently with a friend by name of[7] Kaufmann. 4. He is a[8] student of[9] literature and philosophy at[10] the university. 5. My interest in[11] the study of music and the drama is still very great, and I am learning much abroad. 6. I am much in the society of students and professors; my cousin's wife is the daughter of a professor. 7. There is often talk[12] here of[13] war, but the friends of peace still have hope. 8. Of course I know[14] little of affairs of state and do not take much interest in[15] the matter. 9. In the year of the presidential-election the interest in politics[16] is always very lively.

VOCABULARY.

An'gele'genheit', *f. w.*, affair.
Bekannt'schaft, *f. w.*, acquaintance.
beste'hen (aus), *v.*, consist (of).
Bib'liothek', *f. w.*, library.
Ende, *n. mx.* (*gen.* -s), **end.**
Friede, *m. mx.* (*gen.* -ns), peace.
Haupt, *n. s. 3*, **head**, chief.
hauptsächlich, *adv.*, chiefly.
Interes'se, *n. mx.* (*gen.* -s), *interest.*
Kunst, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), art.
lauter, *adv.*, exclusively, none but.
lebhaft, *adj.*, **live-ly.**
Lit'teratur', *f. w.*, *literature.*
Med'izin', *f. w.*, *medicine.*
mein, *pron.* (*poss.*), **my.**
Nachbar, *m. mx.*, **neighbor.**
Phi'losophie', *f. w.*, *philosophy.*
Profes'sor, *m. mx.*, *professor.*
reden, *v.*, talk; *pret.*, redete.
U'niversität', *f. w.*, *university.*
Vetter, *m. mx.*, cousin.

NOTES.—[1] **an**, see p. 57, n. 5.—[2] **Familienbilder**, *family portraits;* for first element of compound, see § 400. 2, *b*.—[3] **man redet viel**, *they talk much, there is much talk.*—[4] **at supper**, zu Tische.—[5] **with**,

do not use mit.— [6] **city-library**, Stadtbibliothek.— [7] **by name of**, Namens. —[8] **a**, see p. 28, n. 7.— [9] **of**, do not use prep.—[10] **at**, see p. 57, n. 5.— [11] **in**, für.— [12] **there is often talk**, man redet oft; cf. n. 3.—[13] **of**, vom.— [14] **I know**, ich weiß.—[15] **in**, an with the dat.—[16] **politics**, see p. 54, n. 3.

EXERCISE XIII e.

1. Haben Sie in der Bibliothek ein paar Bücher über[1] das Studium des Dramas? 2. Hier ist ein Werk von[2] dem Professor der Litteratur an[3] der Universität. 3. Wie geht's mit der Arbeit? Haben Sie nun bald den Doktortitel?[4] 4. Es geht ziemlich langsam, denn die Sprache war mir am Anfang sehr schwer. 5. Der Schmerz über den Tod des Königs ist sehr lebhaft in der Nation. 6. Die Kinder der Nachbarn sind bei uns[5] willkommen, denn sie sind ruhig und artig. 7. Wir machten neulich einen Spaziergang nach einem Dörfchen in der Nähe. 8. Im Dörfchen wohnen lauter Bauern; sie arbeiten schwer und haben wohl wenig Glück im Leben. 9. Die Königin hat das Glück der Unterthanen immer am Herzen. 10. Die Sonnenstrahlen[6] sind heute sehr heiß; setzen wir uns[7] auf die Bank im Schatten der Bäume.

EXERCISE XIII f.

1. We often take walks in the forest and fields. 2. In the villages one sees mostly peasants. 3. The language and the clothes of the peasants are very strange. 4. A king does not always act in the interest of his subjects. 5. Children, be[8] quiet; your mother has (a) headache. 6. I go daily to the library and read a few hours. 7. I still read quite slowly, for I do not know much of the language. 8. The professor's address on[9] the reform of the drama was instructive and interesting. 9. The child is making all sorts of pictures on the border of the leaves. 10. Guests are always welcome at our house.[5] 11. Through the leaves of the trees one sees here and there a sunbeam.[6] 12. I am now reading a book by[2] Professor Kaufmann, my cousin's father-in-law.[10]

VOCABULARY.

artig, *adj.*, well-behaved, good.
Bauer, *m. mx.*, peasant, [**boor**].
handeln, *v.* act., [**handle**].
Königin, *f. w.*, queen.
Kopfschmerz, *m. mx.*, headache, [-**smart**].
langsam, *adj.*, slow, [**long-some**]; *adv.*, slowly.
lehrreich, *adj.*, instructive.
lesen, *v.*, read.
mir, *pron.* (*dat.*), to me, for me.
Rede, *f. w.*, speech, address.
Reform', *f. w.*, *reform.*
ruhig, *adj.*, quiet.
Schatten, *m. s. 1*, **shade, shadow.**
Schmerz, *m. mx.*, pain, grief, [**smart**].
schwer, *adj.*, heavy, hard.
Schwiegervater, *m. s. 1* (*pl.* ä), **father**-in-law.
sonderbar, *adj.*, strange, [a-**sunder, sundr**-y].
Spazier'gang, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), walk.
Strahl, *m. mx.*, beam, ray.
Titel, *m. s. 1*, *title.*
Tod, *m. s.* (*no pl.*), **death.**
Un'terthan, *m. mx.*, subject.
Werk, *n. s. 2*, **work.**
willkom'men, *adj.*, **welcome.**

NOTES.—[1] **über**, *on.*—[2] **von**, *by.*—[3] **an**, see p. 57, n. 5.—[4] **den Doktortitel**, *the doctor's title, the doctorate.*—[5] **bei uns**, *at our house;* cf. Ex. IX d, n. 8.—[6] **Sonnenstrahlen**, *sun's rays, sunbeams;* for Sonnen- (gen. sing.) see § 400. 2, *b.*—[7] **setzen wir uns**, see p. 43, n. 4.—[8] **be**, seid, 2d pers. pl. imper. of sein.—[9] **on**, über, with acc.—[10] **father-in-law** is in dat. in German, according to rule of apposition; cf. § 270.

EXERCISE XIV c.

1. Herr Doktor[1] Braun ist zu Hause, ist aber heute etwas unwohl. 2. Ich komme wegen der Mutter; sie ist sehr krank und liegt schon[2] zwei Tage im Bette. 3. Sie suchen also einen Arzt; Herr Braun ist aber kein Doktor der Medizin. 4. Ein Arzt Namens Braun wohnt in der Hauptstraße,[3] nicht weit von hier. 5. Wir suchen eine Wohnung[4] in der Nähe von der Universität. 6. Wir wünschen ein Wohnzimmer[5] und zwei Schlafzimmer.[6] 7. Die Schlafzimmer sind gar zu klein; auch ist es früh am Nachmittage schon dunkel hier. 8. Das Stadtmuseum enthält eine Menge Mineralien und Fossilien aus dem Westen.

9. Besuchen wir das Museum heute nachmittag? 10. Sehr gern; mein Interesse für Naturalien ist sehr lebhaft.

EXERCISE XIV d.

[Cf. Colloquy, p. 57.]

1. My cousin has the doctor's-title,[7] but he is not a physician. 2. He is a doctor of philosophy and teacher in a boys' school[8] not far from the park. 3. I have some trouble with my eyes[9]; do you know[10] a physician in the vicinity? 4. Let us go[11] to Dr. Braun; he has to do[12] especially with diseases of the eye.[13] 5. His residence is on Main Street[3]; that is only a few minutes from here. 6. The museum contains a collection of all sorts of[14] fossils. 7. The study of fossils is very important for the history of the earth. 8. The director of the museum is here daily,[15] is he not? 9. To be sure, as a rule[16] he is here, but he is now away on city-business.[17] 10. He is also professor at the university; he is there,[18] however, only a couple of hours in the morning.[19]

VOCABULARY.

Bett, *n. mx.*, **bed.**
Direk'tor, *m. mx.*, *director.*
enthal'ten, *v.*, contain; enthält, contains, [-**hold**].
Erde, *f. w.*, **earth.**
etwas, *pron.* (*indef.*), something, anything; *adv.*, some-**what.**
fort, *adv.*, away.
Fossil', *n. mx.*, (*pl.* -ien), *fossil.*
freilich, *adv.*, to be sure.
Geschäft', *n. s. 2*, business.
krank, *adj.*, sick, ill.
Krankheit, *f. w.*, sickness, disease.
Leiden, *n. s. 1*, suffering, trouble, [**loathe**].
Mineral', *n. mx.*, (*pl.* -ien), *mineral.*
Minu'te, *f. w.*, *minute.*
Muse'um, *n. mx.* (*pl.* -se'en), *museum.*
Natura'lien, *pl. only*, *natural* curiosities.
Regel, *f. w.*, *rule.*
Sammlung, *f. w.*, collection.

Schlaf, *m. s.* (*no pl.*), **sleep.**
un'wohl, *adj.*, **unwell,** indisposed.
wegen, *prep.* (*gen.*), on account of.
wichtig, *adj.*, important, **weighty.**
Wohnung, *f. w.*, dwelling, residence.
wünschen, *v.*, **wish.**

NOTES.—[1] **Herr Doktor,** see p. 52, n. 9.—[2] **liegt schon,** see p. 41, n. 1. [3] **in der Hauptstraße,** *on Main Street;* but names of streets may be left untranslated, cf. p. 70, n. 7.—[4] **eine Wohnung,** *apartments.*—[5] **Wohnzimmer,** *living-room,* i. e., *sitting-room;* first element is root of the verb wohnen.—[6] **Schlafzimmer,** *sleeping-room,* i. e., *bedroom.*—[7] **doctor's-title,** Titel eines Doktors or Doktortitel.—[8] **boys' school,** Knabenschule.—[9] **trouble with my eyes,** Augenleiden.—[10] **know,** kennen.—[11] **let us go,** gehen wir; cf. p. 43, n. 4.—[12] **to do,** see p. 59, n. 3.—[13] **diseases of the eye,** Augenkrankheiten.—[14] **of all sorts of,** von allerlei.—[15] **daily,** § 96. 1.—[16] **as a rule,** in der Regel.—[17] **city-business,** cf. p. 59, n. 6.—[18] **there; position?**—[19] **in the morning,** vormittags.

EXERCISE XIVe.

1. Das Haupt einer Republik ist der Präsident. 2. Das Geschäft geht gut; der Vetter wird schnell reich. 3. Sie schreiben schon sehr gut; der Brief ist beinahe ganz richtig. 4. Die Fehler sind freilich nicht mehr so zahlreich als am Anfang. 5. Das Buch über den Glauben an[1] Gespenster ist wirklich sehr interessant. 6. Der Gedanke, an[1] meinen Freund zu schreiben, war in der That sehr glücklich. 7. Kinder, thut[2] mir den Gefallen und seid ruhig; ich habe heute abend Kopfschmerz. 8. In der Republik hat man Redefreiheit[3] und Preßfreiheit.[4] 9. Wegen der Schwester Krankheit machen wir den Ausflug heute nicht. 10. Der Krieg ist eine Zeit des Leidens unter[5] den Bauern.

EXERCISE XIVf.

1. We wish apartments[6] only a few minutes from the University. 2. Apartments[7] for students are to be had[8] here; they are comfortable and particularly cheap. 3. We need four bedrooms,[9] two sitting-rooms,[10] and a kitchen. 4. Yes, we always make breakfast at home, for[11] we have only coffee and rolls. 5. Is this a sitting-room? It is altogether[12] too small for two desks and two book-cases, a

couple of easy-chairs and a sofa. 6. With three sitting-rooms it will do, I presume.[13] 7. The price, to be sure, is[14] cheap, the beds are very good, and the apartment is only two flights up.[15] 8. I have no longer faith in[1] **my** friend; in the letter is not a word of[16] truth. 9. Freedom of speech[3] is precious to the people.[17] 10. My heart is heavy; I see not a ray of hope. 11. The friends of reform are really very numerous.

VOCABULARY.

beinahe, *adv.*, almost, [**by-nigh**].
bequem', *adj.*, comfortable, [**become**].
brauchen, *v.*, need, [**brook**].
Bücherschrank, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), **book**-case.
Fehler, *m. s. 1*, mistake, [*fail-*].
Frühstück, *n. s. 2*, breakfast, [**-stick**].
Gedank'e, *m. mx.* (*gen.* -ns), thought, idea.
Gefal'len, *m. mx.*, favor.
Glaube, *m. mx.* (*gen.* -ns), belief, faith, [be-**lief**].
glücklich, *adj.*, happy, **luck**-y.
Kaffee, *m. s.* (*no pl.*), *coffee.*
Küche, *f. w.*, *kitchen.*
Lehnstuhl, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), easy-chair, [**lean-stool**].
Presse, *f. w.*, *press.*
Pult, *m. and n. s. 2*, desk, [*pulpit*].
Re'publik', *f. w.*, *republic.*
richtig, *adj.*, **right**, correct.
Semmel, *f. w.*, roll.
Sofa, *n. s.* (*pl.* -s), *sofa*, lounge.
thun, *v.*, **do.**
Treppe, *f. w.*, stairway, flight (of stairs).
Wahrheit, *f. w.*, truth.
wirklich, *adv.*, really.
zahlreich, *adj.*, numerous.

NOTES.—[1] **an** with acc. expresses the goal of thought and the object to or for which after certain verbs; cf. § 377, an, *b.*—[2] **thut**, 2d pers. pl. imper.—[3] **Redefreiheit**, *freedom of speech.*—[4] **Preßfreiheit**, *freedom of the press.*—[5] **unter**, *among.*—[6] **apartments**, eine Wohnung.—[7] **apartments**, Wohnungen.—[8] **to be had**, zu haben; position ?—[9] **bedrooms**, see Ex. XIV c, n. 6.—[10] **sitting-rooms**, see Ex. XIV c, n. 5.—[11] **for**; not für.—[12] **altogether**, ganz und gar.—[13] **it will do**, I presume, geht es wohl.—[14] **is**, position ? § 96.—[15] **up**, hoch.—[16] **not a word of**, kein Wort; for omission of *of*, cf. Ex. VII e, n. 3, and p. 54, n. 1.—[17] **to the people**, dem Volk, after verb.

PROPER NAMES.

EXERCISE XV b.

[Cf. Reading Lesson, p. 61.]

1. Last evening I was at[1] a performance of[2] Schiller's *Maria Stuart*. 2. An actress by name of Bethmann played the part of Maria,[3] a Mrs. Kramer the Elizabeth. 3. An actor from[4] Berlin had the rôle of Leicester, and played especially well. 4. The performance was pretty good from beginning to[5] end. 5. The scene between the queens in the park at[6] Fotheringay was, as usual, particularly strong. 6. A young man[7] from the company of the city-theater[8] played the part of Mortimer. 7. He was altogether[9] too violent in the love-scene with Mary, and his voice was harsh and unpleasant. 8. I go very often to the[10] theater in Germany, usually three-times a[11] week; students[12] get tickets very cheap. 9. There are[13] performances almost weekly of the dramas of the poets Goethe, Schiller and Lessing. 10. They also play the dramas of Shakespeare very often. 11. An actor in Germany knows[14] the rôle of Hamlet or Othello as well as[15] the rôle of Tell or Wallenstein. 12. The works of Shakespeare belong to no people, to no country; they are the property of the world.

VOCABULARY.

Deutſchland, *n.*, Germany.
Eigentum, *n. s. 3*, property, [**own-dom**].
faſt, *adv.*, almost, nearly.
gewöhnlich, *adj.*, usual, ordinary; *adv.*, usually.
rauh, *adj.*, **rough**, harsh.
Rolle, *f. w.*, *rôle*, part.
Scene, *f. w.*, *scene*.
Schauſpieler, *m. s. 1*, actor, [**show-** .
Schauſpielerin, *f. w.*, actress.
ſo, *adv.*, **so**; ſo . . . als, **as** . . . as.
ſtürmiſch, *adj.*, **stormy**, violent.
Thea'ter, *n. s. 1*, *theater*.
unan'genehm, *adj.*, unpleasant.
Vorſtellung, *f. w.*, performance.
wirkungsvoll, *adj.*, effective, strong, [**work-**].

NOTES.—[1] **at**, bei.—[2] **of**, von; cf. p. 57, n. 8.—[3] **of Maria**, der Maria.—[4] **from**, aus.—[5] **to**, bis zum.—[6] **at**, zu.—[7] **young man**, Jüngling.—[8] **city-theater**, Stadttheater.—[9] **altogether**, ganz und gar.—[10] **to the**, ins.—[11] **a**; Ger. idiom requires def. art.—[12] Use art.—[13] **there are**, es giebt.—[14] **knows**, here kann.—[15] **as well as**, ebenso gut als; ebenso = *even as, just as.*

EXERCISE XV c.

1. A few weeks ago I made a journey by way of[1] Weimar and Erfurt to[2] Eisenach. 2. The little cities (of)[3] Weimar and Jena are famous as the scene of[4] Goethe's and Schiller's life and work. 3. Schiller was professor at the University of[5] Jena for a few years.[6] 4. There is[7] a *Life of Goethe* by[8] G. H. Lewes; in it[9] is a description of[10] society in Weimar in[11] Goethe's time. 5. At[12] Eisenach I visited the Wartburg,[13] famous everywhere[14] on account of Martin Luther. 6. The Wartburg was Luther's abode for[15] nearly a year. 7. In Eisenach one sees also the birth-place[16] of the composer Bach. 8. I am now reading the works[17] of Goethe, especially the dramas and poems. 9. *Faust* is the title of[4] Goethe's master-work.[18] 10. In a few days we shall make[19] a trip to Heidelberg; that is a city on the Neckar, a tributary[20] of the Rhine. 11. Germany is, indeed,[21] a land of poetry, music and universities. 12. One also sees there soldiers in large-numbers,[22] and hears much of war and victory. 13. But the names of the Schillers and the Mozarts are as dear to the hearts[23] of the people as the names of kings and heroes.

VOCABULARY.

berühmt', *adj.*, famous.
Beschrei'bung, *f. w.*, description.
Burg, *f. w.*, castle, stronghold, [**borough, bury**].
Dichter, *m. s. 1*, poet.
Dichtung, *f. w.*, poetry.
Geburt', *f. w.*, **-birth**; -s-haus, **birth**-place.
hören, *v.*, **hear**.
Komponist', *m. w.*, *composer*.
Nebenfluß, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* -flüsse), tributary.

Reise, *f. w.*, journey, trip, [**rise**].
Schauplatz, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), scene, [**show**-place].
Städtchen, *n. s. 1*, little city, small town.
Wirken, *n. s. 1*, **work**, activity.
Wohnort, *m. s. 2*, abode, dwelling-place.

NOTES.—[1] **by way of**, über.—[2] **to**, nach.—[3] **of**, for omission cf. Ex. VII e, n. 3.—[4] **of**, use von rather than gen.; cf. p. 57, n. 8.—[5] **of**, omit in transl.—[6] **for a few years**, ein paar Jahre, acc. of duration of time; should immediately follow verb.—[7] **there is**, es giebt.—[8] **by**, von. —[9] **in it**, darin.—[10] **of**, der.—[11] **in**, zu.—[12] **at**, in.—[13] **the Wartburg**, die Wartburg.—[14] **everywhere**, should precede the adj. in Ger.—[15] **for** should not be transl.; cf. n. 6.—[16] **birth-place**, Geburtshaus; for Geburts- cf. p. 62, n. 2, and § 400. 2, *a*.—[17] **works**, Werke; Arbeit is work in the abstract, i. e., *labor, toil*.—[18] **master-work**, Meisterwerk.—[19] **shall make**, see p. 62, n. 5.—[20] Note the apposition, § 270.—[21] **indeed**, in der That.—[22] **in large numbers**, in Menge.—[23] **as dear . . . hearts**, den Herzen . . . ebenso teuer.

ADJECTIVES: STRONG INFLECTION.

EXERCISE XVI c.

1. Der Professor schreibt sehr gute Bücher, ist doch kein guter Lehrer. 2. Der Brief enthält nichts Interessantes über sein neues Leben in der Fremde. 3. Haben Sie heute frische Eier? 4. Auf der Straße hört man ein schlechtes Deutsch. 5. O, ja, das ist in großen Städten oft der Fall. 6. Ein armer Mann mit grauen Haaren steht vor der Thür. 7. Lieber, alter Freund![1] Du hast wirklich schwere Leiden. 8. Das sind aber[2] liebenswürdige Kinder, nicht wahr? 9. Er redet mit einfachen Worten aber seltener Kraft. 10. Mein Onkel hat zwei junge Töchter von seltner Schönheit. 11. Wir kaufen einen neuen Wagen mit vier bequemen Plätzen. 12. Neue Bücher sind freilich schön; dem Studenten sind aber alte Bücher oft teure Freunde.

EXERCISE XVI d.

[Cf. Reading Lesson, p. 66.]

1. I have now been[3] abroad for ten long months.[4] 2. I am now living in Dresden for a few weeks.[5] 3. This is a beautiful city, with interesting museums and collections and world-famous[6] picture-galleries.[7] 4. I have two large, handsome[8] rooms at a[9] tolerably cheap price. 5. My landlady is an interesting woman of rare intelligence; she is still quite young. 6. She was many years a teacher in a girls'-school. 7. Since the death of an uncle in America she has (had) a small property. 8. The family consists of the mother, a son, and two lovely daughters. 9. Mrs. Ritter's husband died many years ago,[10] and she was for a long time[11] very poor. 10. My young friend, the son of Mrs. Ritter, takes a great interest in[12] my language-studies.[13] 11. I speak pretty correctly now, but in letters I often write very bad German and he always corrects it. 12. The young man is a student at[14] the University (of) Leipzig, and he tells me all sorts of interesting things[15] about student-life[16] in Germany.

VOCABULARY.

alt, *adj.*, **old.**
Deutſch, *n.* (*indecl.*), German.
doch, *adv.*, yet, still, **though.**
erzählen, *v.*, relate, tell, [**-tell**].
Fall, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), case, [**fall**].
Gallerie', *f. w.*, *gallery.*
grau, *adj.*, **gray.**
Haar, *n. s. 2*, **hair.**
jung, *adj.*, **young.**
Kraft, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), force, strength, [**craft**].
lieb, *adj.*, dear [**lief**].
lie'benswür'dig, *adj.*, lovely, [**loveworthy**].
neu, *adj.*, **new.**
ſchlecht, *adj.*, bad.
ſein, *poss.*, his.
ſeit, *prep.* (*dat.*), **since.**
ſprechen, *v.*, speak.
verbeſſern, *v.*, correct, [**-better**].
Verſtand', *m. s.* (*no pl.*), intelligence, under-**standing.**

NOTES.—[1] See p. 68, n. 1 and n. 3.—[2] **das sind aber**, cf. p. 68, n. 7.—[3] **I have been**, see p. 41, n. 1.—[4] **for ten long months**; use acc. of time without prep.—[5] **for a few weeks**, auf ein paar Wochen; cf. p. 68, n. 2. [6] **world-famous**, weltberühmt.—[7] **picture-galleries**, Bildergallerien.—[8] **large, handsome**, see p. 68, n. 3 —[9] Omit.—[10] **died many years ago**, starb vor vielen Jahren *or* ist seit vielen Jahren tot; cf. p. 62, n. 8.—[11] **for a long time**, cf. n. 4.—[12] **in**, an with dat.—[13] **language-studies**, Sprachstudien.—[14] **at**, see p. 57, n. 5.—[15] **all sorts . . . things**, allerlei Interessantes.—[16] **about student-life**, vom Studentenleben.

EXERCISE XVI e.

1. Kaufen wir[1] weiße oder rote Rosen? 2. Das Buch ist wohl interessant, aber es ist[2] nichts Wichtiges darin. 3. Ein freundlicher Herr mit langem, weißem Bart sagte mir die Adresse des Arztes. 4. Ich lese des Dichters neues Drama mit lebhaftem Interesse. 5. Armer Mann! Die Stütze seines Alters ist tot, und er hat jetzt nichts Weiteres im Leben. 6. Für ein solches Zimmer, mit Licht und voller Bedienung, ist der Preis gar nicht teuer. 7. In der Zeitung stehen jetzt tägliche Nachrichten aus der Fremde. 8. Neue Gebäude sind etwas Seltenes im Dörfchen. 9. Der Herr Direktor ist ein reicher Mann, nicht wahr? 10. Ja, wohl; er hat ein schönes Haus nnd einen großen Garten mit allerlei seltnen Bäumen und Blumen.

EXERCISE XVI f.

1. Poor children! So you have[3] no father and no mother? 2. Old friends are not always faithful friends. 3. Bad music in Germany is indeed something rare. 4. The cottage has two large and five small rooms. 5. My bedroom contains[4] only a bed, a small table, and a chair. 6. We shall have[5] good weather to-morrow; shall we take[6] a long walk? 7. Let us go to the cottage on the edge of the woods; a poor workingman lives there with four little children. 8. I have here a quiet, simple life with old friends of the family. 9. We shall soon buy[5] a new house near the park. 10. Here are all sorts of pretty ribbons, blue, red, white, yellow, green. 11. Do you wish wide or

narrow ribbons? 12. I wish a broad, blue ribbon for my new straw hat.[7]

VOCABULARY.

Adreſ'ſe, *f. w.*, *address.*
Alter, *n. s. 1*, old age, age.
Bart, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), **beard.**
Bedie'nung, *f. w.*, service.
blau, *adj.*, blue.
breit, *adj.*, **broad,** wide.
eng, *adj.*, narrow.
gelb, *adj.*, yellow.
hübſch, *adj.*, pretty.
Ro'ſe, *f. w.*, *rose.*
rot, *adj.*, **red.**
ſolch, *adj.*, **such.**
Stütze, *f. w.*, prop, support, [**stud**[8]].
tot, *adj.*, **dead.**
treu, *adj.*, **true,** faithful.
voll, *adj.*, **full.**
weiß, *adj.*, **white.**
weiter, *adj.*, further, [**wider**].

NOTES.—[1] **kaufen wir,** *shall we buy?*—[2] **es iſt,** *there is.*—[3] **so you have,** ihr habt alſo.—[4] **contains,** enthält.—[5] Use pres.—[6] **shall we take,** machen wir?—[7] **straw hat,** Strohhut.—[8] **stud,** a piece of timber used to support the beams of a house.

EXERCISE XVII c.

1. Die Bibliothek enthält lauter neue Bücher. 2. Das iſt ja[1] ein trefflicher Gedanke; ſo etwas macht der Mutter gewiß große Freude. 3. Ich bin heute in ſehr trauriger Stimmung, und aus gutem Grunde. 4. Mein letzter Brief aus der Heimat bringt Nachricht von dem Tode eines Herzensfreundes.[2] 5. Dort im Garten ſpielen Karl und ſein kleiner Bruder, — hübſche Kerlchen, nicht wahr? 6. Und auch artige, wohl etwas Wichtiges,[3] denn ſolche Kinder ſieht man ſelten. 7. Die Rede des Kandidaten enthält wichtige Punkte. 8. Denken Sie, es giebt wahre Gründe der Angſt wegen eines Krieges? 9. Es iſt offenbar große Unruhe im Staate. 10. Nach ſo vielen Jahren glücklichen Friedens iſt aber der Krieg etwas Elendes. 11. Wir leben noch immer in der Hoffnung froher Zeiten nach langem Leiden.

EXERCISE XVII d.

[Cf. Colloquy, p. 68.]

1. My old friend is a capital fellow, isn't he? 2. One is always in happy mood in the society of such kind people. 3. Well,[4] what is the news[5] to-day? Have you a letter from home? 4. The letter contains no such good[6] news as last week; my little brother is again very sick. 5. Have you comfortable rooms now? They are mostly to be had[7] only at[8] (a) high price. 6. I have been living for two months[9] at No. 2 Hauptstrasse[10]; the rooms are splendid, but I have wretched board. 7. Last year,[11] with Mrs. Müller in Königstrasse,[12] the board was excellent, but I had a small, dark room. 8. Good coffee is an important matter[8] here, for one has for[13] breakfast almost nothing else. 9. My good friend Fritz really has a great piece-of-luck.[14] 10. He has splendid rooms only a few minutes from the university, with excellent service and board. 11. The house, too, is almost a royal palace; the owner was until (a) short time ago[15] a very rich merchant.

VOCABULARY.

ander, *adj.*, **other**, else.
Angst, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* Ä), *anxiety*, apprehension.
denken, *v.*, **think**.
elend, *adj.*, wretched, miserable.
Freude, *f. w.*, joy, pleasure.
froh, *adj.*, happy.
Grund, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), reason, **ground**.
Heimat, *f. w.*, home, native place *or* country, [**home-**].
Kerl, *m. s. 2*, fellow, [**churl**].
königlich, *adj.*, royal, **kingly**.
Kost, *f. w.*, fare, board, [*cost*].
kurz, *adj.*, short, [*curt*].
letzt, *adj.*, **last**.
Numero, *m.* (*indecl.*), at No.
offenbar, *adj.*, evident; *adv.*, evidently, plainly, [**open-**].
prächtig, *adj.*, splendid.
Punkt, *m. s. 2*, *point*.
Stimmung, *f. w.*, mood.
traurig, *adj.*, sad, sorrowful, [**dreary**].
trefflich, *adj.*, excellent, capital.
Un'ruhe, *f. w.*, unrest, concern.
vorig, *adj.*, last, former.
wieder, *adv.*, again, [**with**].

NOTES.—[1] **ja**, *indeed.*—[2] **Herzensfreund**, *bosom-friend.*—[3] **etwas Wichtiges**, *an important matter;* lit. *something important.*—[4] **well, nun**, not wohl.—[5] **what is the news**, was giebt's Neues? giebt's = giebt es.—[6] **no such good**, keine so gute.—[7] **to be had**, zu haben; position?—[8] **at**, zu; high, cf. § 109. 1.—[9] **for two months**, seit zwei Monaten.—[10] **at No. 2 . . .**, see p. 70, n. 7.—[11] **last year**, voriges Jahr, acc. of time when.—[12] Use def. art.; cf. p. 70, n. 7 and 8.—[13] **for**, zum.—[14] **piece-of-luck**, Glück.—[15] **until . . . ago**, bis vor kurzer Zeit, *or* bis vor kurzem.

EXERCISE XVII e.

1. Giebt es etwas in der Zeitung über den Krieg? 2. Ich lese die Zeitungen jetzt nur ganz flüchtig. 3. Wegen des Examens am Ende des Monats habe ich viele Arbeit. 4. Alte Bücher sind hier sehr billig zu haben. 5. Wir haben nun vier Monate sehr heißen Wetters; zum Glück ist der Herbst bald hier. 6. Von meinem Freunde habe ich heute einen langen Brief, von dem Bruder noch kein Wort. 7. Ich denke, ich kenne den Arzt; er ist ein großer,[1] starker Herr mit braunem Bart, nicht wahr? 8. Sind gute Zimmer mit Kost hier zu haben? 9. Mit voller Kost nicht, nur mit leichtem Frühstück. 10. Die Studenten geben heute abend ein paar Scenen aus Schillers „Wilhelm Tell"; mein Vetter spielt die Rolle des Melchthal.

EXERCISE XVII f.

1. Why are you in such a[2] happy mood to-day? Have you good news from home?[3] 2. The book contains a multitude (of) clever thoughts.[4] 3. A great poet is not always great as (a) man.[5] 4. We are going in (a)[6] short time, perhaps in a few days. 5. Bad company brings many boys to[7] misfortune. 6. One often sees narrow streets in old cities. 7. Uncle[8] sends a new bicycle for Fritz and all sorts of beautiful books for the children. 8. The Rhine[9] is not a broad river; the rivers of Germany are mostly narrow. 9. A new actor, a young man from Dresden, played the part of Max in Schiller's *Wallenstein* last evening. 10. Have you a good theater in such a[10] small place? 11. A pretty good (one)[11]; we have also opera twice a[12]

week in winter. 12. It is evidently quite different in Germany from (what it is) with us.[13]

VOCABULARY.

braun, *adj.*, **brown.**
Exa'men, *n. s.*, *pl.* Exa'mina, *examination.*
flüchtig, *adj.*, hasty, cursory; *adv.*, hastily, hurriedly, [**flighty**].
klug, *adj.*, clever, ingenious.
leicht, *adj.*, **light**, easy.
Oper, *f. w.*, *opera.*
Ort, *m. s. 2*, place.
Rhein, *m.*, Rhine.
schicken, *v.*, send.
stark, *adj.*, strong, stout, [**stark**].
Unglück, *n. s.* (*no pl.*), misfortune, unhappiness, [**-luck**].
warum', *adv. inter.*, why.
zweimal, *adv.*, twice, [**two-**].

NOTES.—[1] **großer,** *tall.*—[2] **in such a,** in einer so; see § 135. 1, *a.*—[3] **from home,** aus der Heimat.—[4] **a multitude . . . thoughts,** eine Menge kluge (*or* kluger) Gedanken; see § 246. 1, *a.*—[5] **man,** Mensch, not Mann; see p. 52, n. 12.—[6] **in (a),** in, with dat.; the indef. art. is not needed in German.—[7] **to,** zum.—[8] Use def. art.—[9] Note the gender; cf. § 233. 2, *b.*—[10] **such a,** cf. n. 2.—[11] **a . . . (one),** see § 110.—[12] **a,** Ger. idiom requires def. art.—[13] **from with us,** als bei uns.

ADJECTIVES: WEAK INFLECTION.

EXERCISE XVIII c.

1. Die hohen Gebäude, besonders die engen, in den großen Städten sind selten schön. 2. Der Vater meines jungen Freundes ist ein reicher Kaufmann. 3. An jedem schönen Nachmittag mache ich einen langen Spaziergang. 4. Mein Onkel wohnt in jenem neuen Hause auf der rechten Seite der Straße. 5. Die Eltern der armen Kinder sind tot. 6. Was denken Sie von meiner neuen Lehrerin? Sie ist eine sehr freundliche Dame, nicht wahr? 7. Ich sehe keinen eigentlichen Unterschied zwischen dem teuren und dem billigen Tuche. 8. Durch Reisen gewinnt man viel an Kenntnis[1] der fremden Länder und

Völker. 9. In ganz[2] Amerika hat er keinen eigentlichen Freund. 10. Die Reichen sind nicht immer glücklich. 11. Durch eigene Erfahrung lernt man viel. 12. Er hat wahre Einsicht in das Leben und Leiden der Armen. 13. Im Mittelalter war Europa der Schauplatz manches blutigen Krieges. 14. Kinder, seid immer Freunde des Guten, des Wahren und des Edlen.

EXERCISE XVIII d.

[Cf. Reading Lesson, p. 74.]

1. Since the beginning of the new year I have been[3] in this famous old city (of) Leipzig. 2. The situation of the city is not a particularly beautiful (one).[4] 3. There are no high hills in the vicinity, no valleys, everywhere a great, broad plain. 4. The Leipzig weather is often raw and disagreeable. 5. The Leipzig people, however, are very friendly. 6. This[5] city has much (that is) interesting for the student, above all,[6] of course, the great university. 7. The new buildings of the university are very handsome. 8. The city has a rich commerce; the great book-trade[7] of Leipzig is especially important. 9. I know (of) no city with so many book-stores; in nearly every one[8] they sell old as well as[9] new books. 10. In the environs of Leipzig is a beautiful park, the Rosenthal.[10] 11. Here are good concerts on[11] every fair evening through the entire summer. 12. There are[12] also two good concerts daily in the little park by[13] the New Theater. 13. In the course of the winter and spring I visited[14] the theater nearly (a) hundred times. 14. At the[16] New Theater there is a performance of drama or opera every evening,[17] at the Old Theater only a couple of times[18] weekly. 15. I am gaining in knowledge[1] of the German language, much more in Leipzig than in the other cities of Germany.

VOCABULARY.

Amerika, *n.*, *America.*
blutig, *adj.*, **bloody.**
Buchhandlung, *f. w.*, **bookstore**, [**-handle**].
Ebene, *f. w.*, plain, [**even**].
edel, *adj.*, noble, [**Ethel**[19]].
eigen, *adj.*, **own.**
eigentlich, *adj.*, real, actual.
Einsicht, *f. w.*, **insight.**
Eltern, *pl. only*, parents, [**elders**].
Erfahrung, *f. w.*, experience, [**-faring**].
erst, *adj.*, first, [**erst**].
Euro'pa, *n.*, *Europe.*
fremd, *adj.*, strange, foreign.
gewinnen, *v.*, gain, **-win.**
jed-, *pron.*, every, each.
jen-, *pron.*, that, [**yon**].
Kenntnis, *f. s. 2*, knowledge.
Lage, *f. w.*, situation, location, [**lay**].
manch, *pron. adj.*, **many** (a).
mittel, *adj.*, **middle.**
recht, *adj.*, **right, right-hand.**
Umge'bung, *f. w.*, environs.
Unterschied, *m. s. 2*, difference.
Verlauf, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* äu), course, [**-leap**].

NOTES.—[1] **an Kenntnis,** IN *knowledge;* note the prep.—[2] **ganz,** *all;* note the uninflected adj., cf. § 109. 3.—[3] **I have been,** see p. 41, n. 1. [4] **not a . . . (one),** see § 110.—[5] **this,** diese; dies, jed- and jen- are declined like strong adjectives; cf. § 129.—[6] **above all,** vor allem.—[7] **book-trade,** Buchhandel.—[8] **in nearly every one,** in fast jeder; cf. n. 5.—[9] **as well as,** so wohl als.—[10] das Rosenthal.—[11] **on,** an with dat.—[12] **there are,** es giebt.—[13] **by,** neben.—[14] **visited,** besuchte.—[15] **(a) hundred times,** hundertmal.—[16] **at the,** im.—[17] **every evening,** jeden Abend, acc. of time; cf. § 266. 2.—[18] **a couple of times,** ein paarmal.—[19] **Ethel,** the proper name; original force appears in Old Eng. names, as Ethelred, Ethelwulf, etc.

EXERCISE XVIII e.

1. Wegen des schlechten Wetters bleibe ich heute zu Hause. 2. Auf den Spitzen der hohen Berge liegt der Schnee das ganze Jahr durch. 3. Gehen wir[1] immer den goldenen Mittelweg! 4. In jedem Kriege giebt es manche tapfere Helden. 5. Kinder, die Tante besucht uns im Verlauf des Tages; möge sie[2] euch artig finden. 6. Du armer Junge! Du hast also keinen einzigen Verwandten[3] im ganzen Lande? 7. Ist das aber eine Schöne[4] am Fenster dort! Kennen sie das Fräulein? 8. Der

wahre Held ist dem Schlechten und Unedlen immer feind. 9. Am Ende der Woche findet man die Nüsse ohne Zweifel reif. 10. Das arme Mädchen arbeitet sich gewiß tot; zu solcher schweren Arbeit ist sie ganz und gar zu jung. 11. Die New Yorker Staats-Zeitung enthält Nachrichten aus den verschiedenen Städten Deutschlands.

EXERCISE XVIII f.

1. January is the first month of the year. 2. The pictures in the old castle are very beautiful. 3. Yesterday we took[5] a walk through half (of) Leipzig. 4. Children, are you not yet ready? It is already high time to go. 5. A painter usually has great love of the beautiful. 6. On account of the hot weather I shall take[6] only a short walk to-day. 7. Have you a good picture of the little ones? 8. We are going to the country to-morrow with the whole family. 9. He is certainly a bad fellow; he has no feeling for the good and the beautiful. 10. The new teacher is a relative[3] of my father. 11. Do you know your real friends now? Do you see the difference between[7] the true and the false? 12. The school-director is going to visit[6] us in the course of the day; he has something important to say. 13. Many a[8] good man's misfortune comes through false friends. 14. All England is happy on account of the close of the war.

VOCABULARY.

bereit', *adj.*, **ready.**
bleiben, *v.*, remain, [-**leave**].
einzig, *adj.*, single, only, [**one**-ly].
euch, *pron.* (*dat.*, *acc.*), you.
falsch, *adj.*, *false.*
feind, *adj.*, hostile (to, *dat.*), [**fiend**].
finden, *v.*, **find.**
Gefühl, *n. s. 2*, **feel-ing.**
golden, *adj.*, **golden.**
halb, *adj.*, **half.**
Januar', *m. s. 2*, *January.*
Junge, *m. w.*, boy, lad.
mögen, *v.*, **may.**
Nuß, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* Nüsse), **nut.**
ohne, *prep.* (*acc.*), without.
Schnee, *m. s.* (*no pl.*), **snow.**

Spitze, *f. w.*, point, top, [**spit**].
Tante, *f. w.*, *aunt.*
tapfer, *adj.*, brave, [**dapper**].
unedel, *adj.*, ignoble, base.
verschie'den, *adj.*, different.
Verwandte, *m. or f.* (decl. like *adj.*[3]), relative.
Zweifel, *m. s. 1*, doubt, [**two-**].

NOTES.—[1]**gehen wir,** *let us take;* cf. p. 43, n. 4.—[2]**möge sie,** *may she;* the verb is a subjunctive expressing a wish.—[3]**Verwandten;** adjectives and participial adjectives used as substantives are subject to the same rules of strong and weak inflection as attributive adjectives; hence der Verwandte, but ein Verwandter; cf. § 290. 2.—[4]**ist das aber eine Schöne,** *but isn't that a pretty girl!* Note the inverted order for emphasis, cf. § 419. 5.—[5]**took,** machten.—[6]**shall take,** see p. 62, n. 5.—[7]The prep. in Ger. governs dat. here.—[8]**many a** = **manch,** the *a* not being transl. by the art.

EXERCISE XIX c.

1. Man sieht jetzt viele Amerikaner in Deutschland und in Europa überhaupt. 2. Besonders in den Universitätsstädten sieht man viele amerikanischen Studenten. 3. In Leipzig sind auch manche Studenten und Studentinnen der Musik. 4. Nun, wie finden Sie die Alte Welt? Im Anfang etwas sonderbar, doch im ganzen[1] sehr interessant, nicht wahr? 5. Ich fürchte, ich bin kein guter Amerikaner; das Leben ist mir jetzt so langweilig und uninteressant hier. 6. Das ist ja nichts Sonderbares nach einer so langen Reise. 7. Jedes Land hat seine gute Seite, freilich auch seine schlechte; der Reisende sieht aber in der Fremde meistens nur das Gute und Schöne. 8. Im ganzen ist das Leben in den Vereinigten Staaten, außer vielleicht in den großen Städten, doch kein unangenehmes. 9. Bitte,[2] erzählen Sie mir etwas von der Reise. Waren[3] Sie seekrank?[4] 10. Zum Glück, gar nicht; wegen der starken Winde ist September auch keine sehr gute Jahreszeit zur Seereise.

EXERCISE XIX d.

1. We are having a splendid journey abroad; one sees so many interesting places, and everything is so new and

strange. 2. Say[5] rather, so old; for many of these quaint cities and splendid castles were no longer young at the[6] time of the discovery of America. 3. Please[2] tell[5] me[7] the title of a good history of Germany; I have (a) great interest now in everything German.[8] 4. I am studying the German language very industriously, too,[9] but find it[10] pretty hard. 5. German grammar is very dull for me,[11] but of course without the grammar one never learns a foreign language correctly. 6. I am coming to[12] Germany again next summer, and so I shall take[13] lessons the whole winter. 7. When do you leave Germany for the return-journey? 8. We first make a short trip in Switzerland,[14] and begin the sea-voyage[15] [in] [16] the last week of September. 9. I hope you (will) have good weather and no high[17] winds. 10. Many thanks,[18] but I am never seasick[4] and so[19] the weather makes no great difference.

VOCABULARY.

amerika'nisch, *adj.*, *American.*
außer, *prep.* (*dat.*), except, **out**-side of.
beginnen, *v.*, **begin.**
bitten, *v.*, ask; (ich) bitte, please, [**bid**].
Dank, *m. s.* (*no pl.*), **thanks.**
Entdeckung, *f. w.*, discovery.
fleißig, *adj.*, industrious.
fürchten, *v.*, fear.
Grammat'ik, *f. w.*, *grammar.*
Jahreszeit, *f. w.*, season, [**year-tide**].
künftig, *adj.*, coming, next.
langweilig, *adj.*, dull, tedious, [**long-while-y**].
niemals, *adv.*, never.
Reisende, *m. or f.* (*decl. like adj.*),[20] traveller.
Rückreise, *f. w.*, return-journey.
Schweiz, *f.*, *Switz*-erland.
See, *f. w.* (*pl.* Seen *or* Seeen), **sea**, ocean.
seltsam, *adj.*, strange, quaint, [**seld**-om].
September, *m. s. 1*, *September.*
Student'in, *f. w.*, *student.*
studie'ren, *v.*, *study.*
verei'nigt, *ppl.*, united, [**-one-**].
verlas'sen, *v.*, leave, [**-let**].
vielmehr', *adv.*, rather.
zuerst', *adv.*, first, [**-erst**].

NOTES.—[1] **im ganzen,** *upon the whole.*—[2] **Bitte,** see p. 78, n. 2.—

[3] **Waren,** *were.*—[4] **seekrank,** *seasick.*—[5] **Say, tell,** sagen Sie or sage; note that in the imperative of formal address the personal pronoun cannot be omitted; the form is, properly speaking, the 3d pers. pl. of the pres. subjunc., cf. § 172. 3.—[6] **at the,** zur.—[7] **me,** mir, dat. of indirect object.—[8] **in everything German,** für alles Deutsche.—[9] **too;** the Ger. equivalent should precede 'very.'—[10] **it,** sie, lit. *her,* Sprache being fem., cf. § 122. 1.—[11] **for me,** mir, immediately after 'is.'—[12] **to,** nach.—[13] **and so I shall take,** und nehme also.—[14] **in Switzerland,** in der Schweiz; note that the art. is required, as with all fem. names of countries and a few others, cf. § 225. 3.—[15] **sea-voyage,** Seereise.—[16] [in] should be inserted, with dat.—[17] **high,** here stark.—[18] **Many thanks,** vielen Dank; note the acc., some verb of 'uttering' or 'expressing' being understood; cf. p. 70, n. 1.—[19] **so,** also, after verb.—[20] **Reisende;** cf. Ex. XVIII e, n. 3.

EXERCISE XIX e.

1. In fremden Ländern findet man viel Neues, viel Seltsames. 2. Kennen Sie ein interessantes Werk über das deutsche Leben im Mittelalter? 3. Von der politischen Geschichte weiß ich schon ziemlich viel; ich brauche also vielmehr eine Geschichte des Volkes. 4. Aus der alten Litteratur lernt man viel über das Volksleben. 5. Doch hauptsächlich über das Hofleben,[1] nicht wahr? denn damit hat die Dichtung meistens zu thun. 6. Das ist mit mancher Dichtung freilich der Fall; aus anderen gewinnt man doch Einsicht in das tägliche Leben der gemeinen Menschen. 7. Ich lese jetzt ein neues Drama von Hauptmann; es enthält recht sonderbare Gedanken. 8. Es ist doch etwas Kraftvolles darin; vielleicht ist es die große Kenntnis des heutigen Lebens in Deutschland. 9. In manchen seiner Werke findet man ein treues Bild vom Leben der Armen. 10. Durch die Werke eines großen Schriftstellers kommen die Leiden der Armen manchmal den Reichen zu Ohren.

EXERCISE XIX f.

1. On account of the bad weather my visit in the country was somewhat dull. 2. In the course of the two weeks we had[2] at least ten rainy days.[3] 3. On[4] the right side of

the river are high mountains, on the left a broad, fertile valley. 4. We see the good old times mostly through the mirror of poetry. 5. From[5] history, however,[6] we know the truth; the present[7] times are really[8] the good ones. 6. The United States is[9] large enough and certainly has[9] nothing to gain[10] by war. 7. Have you a good ear for music?[11] 8. The belief in[12] a future life lies in the hearts of men. 9. I do not know a single person here except that old gentleman by[13] the door. 10. A letter from home[14] always puts me in[15] (a) happy mood. 11. The summer-months are properly[8] June, July and August, but we sometimes have pretty hot weather in[16] May and September also. 12. The literature of modern times[17] has to do with the life of ordinary people.

VOCABULARY.

Auguſt', *m. s. 2, August.*
Beſuch, *m. s. 2*, visit, [-seek].
damit', *adv.*, **there**-with, with it.
fruchtbar, *adj.*, fertile, *fruit*-ful.
gemein', *adj.*, common, ordinary, [-**mean**].
heutig, *adj.*, of to-day, to-day's.
Hof, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ö), court.
Juni, *m.* (*no pl.*), *June.*
kraftvoll, *adj.*, power-**ful**, [**craft**-].
link, *adj.*, left, left-hand.
Mai, *m. s. 2, May.*
Ohr, *n. mx.*, **ear.**
poli'tiſch, *adj.*, *political.*
Schriftſteller, *m. s. 1*, writer, author, [**shrift**-, *script*-].
wenigſtens, *adv.*, at least.
zuweilen, *adv.*, sometimes.

NOTES.—[1] **Hofleben**, *court-life.*—[2] **had**, hatten.—[3] **rainy days**, Regentage.—[4] **on**, auf with dat.—[5] **from**, aus der.—[6] **however**, doch should follow the inverted subject.—[7] **present**, heutig.—[8] **really**, eigentlich.—[9] **is, has**; use pl. verb in German.—[10] **to gain**; position?—[11] Use generic art.—[12] **in**, an with acc.—[13] **by**, an.—[14] **from home**, aus der Heimat.—[15] **puts . . . in**, versetzt . . . in, with acc.—[16] **in**, im.—[17] **of modern times**, der neuen Zeit.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

EXERCISE XX c.

1. Am Schluß der Ferien, vielleicht auch etwas früher, verlassen wir das Häuschen im Gebirge. 2. Wir wohnen lieber auf dem Lande, denn das Leben ist dort viel billiger und weit freundlicher als in der Stadt. 3. Besonders in den größeren Städten ist das Leben sehr teuer, und es wird[1] wohl mit jedem Jahr teurer. 4. Nach der längeren[2] Ruhe bin ich viel stärker und zu der Arbeit des nächsten Jahres wieder bereit. 5. Im Verlauf des Sommers machten wir mehrere Ausflüge nach den höheren Bergen in der Nähe. 6. Die Ausflüge nach den verschiedenen Schlössern waren doch am schönsten. 7. Über die interessantesten der Sehenswürdigkeiten machte ich öfters kurze Notizen. 8. Mein ältester Bruder geht in den nächsten Tagen[3] nach Berlin.[4] 9. Wegen seiner Studien über das deutsche Volksleben in der älteren[5] Zeit braucht er ein paar höchst seltene Bücher. 10. Diese Bücher sind nämlich[6] nur in der Königlichen Bibliothek zu finden. 11. Mit besten Grüßen an die jüngeren Brüder verbleibe ich Dein treuester Freund.

EXERCISE XX d.

[Cf. Reading Lesson, p. 80.]

1. I find my vacation extremely pleasant and beneficial. 2. For a considerable time[7] now I have felt[8] stronger and my health is much better than (it was) two months ago. 3. On account of my greater knowledge of the German language, the trip is interesting in a far higher degree than in former[9] years. 4. I have also a far better idea of German life, for this summer[10] we are visiting only the smaller towns and so[11] make acquaintances more quickly and easily. 5. The sights are perhaps less famous than in the larger cities, but often not less interesting. 6. On account of the exceedingly hot weather, we shall not go to South-Germany. 7. We have now been in Göttingen several weeks; from

this town we are going to Jena, but probably first to Leipzig. 8. We are to remain[12] there a few days and visit the most important places-of-interest. 9. I know Leipzig better than all (the) other cities of Germany, for I lived[13] there longest. 10. My younger brother, however, is abroad for the[14] first time. 11. We have at this season the longest days and shortest nights. 12. Göttingen has a most beautiful location. 13. The life is, of course, much quieter than in the more important cities, but on account of my health that pleases me best. 14. I have much of interest to tell about my travels, but will write[15] nothing further[16] this time.

VOCABULARY.

angenehm, *adj.*, pleasant.
Begriff', *m. s. 2*, idea, conception, [-**grip**].
Ferien, *f.* (*pl. only*), vacation.
früher, *adj.*, former; *adv.*, formerly.
fühlen, *v.*, **feel**.
gefallen, *v.* (*dat.*), please; gefällt, pleases.
Gesundheit, *f. w.*, health, [-**sound**-].
Grad, *m. s. 2*, degree, *grade*.
Gruß, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* Grüße), **greet**-ing.
lieber, *adv.*, rather, preferably, [**lief**-].
Mal, *n. s. 2–3*, time, [**mole**].
mehrere, *adj.*, several.
mich, *pron.* (*acc.*), **me**.
nämlich, *adv.*, **namely**, that is to say.
Notiz', *f. w.*, note, *notice*.
öfters, *adv.*, often, frequently.
Ruhe, *f. w.* (*no pl.*), rest.
Se'hens würdigkeit, *f. w.*, sight (i. e., thing **worth see**-ing), object *or* place of interest.
Süddeutschland, *n.*, **South** Germany.
verbleiben, *v.*, remain, [-**leave**].
wahrschein'lich, *adj.*, probable; *adv.*, probably.
Wanderung, *f. w.*, **wandering**, travel.
zunächst', *adv.*, first, [-**next**].
zu'träglich, *adj.*, beneficial.

NOTES.—[1]**es wird**, see p. 48, n. 4.—[2]**längeren**, *somewhat long, considerable;* cf. p. 82, n. 1.—[3]**in . . . Tagen**, *within the next few days*.

—[3] **Berlin**, pronounce *-leen'*.—[5] **älteren**, *olden*.—[6] **nämlich**, *you see*.—[7] **for a considerable time**, seit längerer Zeit.—[8] **have felt**; express in normal order in German: Ich fühle mich nun seit, etc.—[9] **former**, previous, früher; lit. *earlier*.—[10] **this summer**; use acc. of time, place after the verb.—[11] **so**, also, to follow verb.—[12] **are to remain**; use pres., cf. p. 62, n. 5.—[13] **lived**, wohnte.—[14] **for the**, zum.—[15] **but will write**, schreibe doch.—[16] **nothing further**, nichts Weiteres.

EXERCISE XX e.

1. Wir haben in diesem Sommer das heißeste Wetter seit vielen, vielen Jahren. 2. Die meisten Lehrbücher sind mehr lehrreich als interessant. 3. Das ist natürlich bei Lehrbüchern zu erwarten; die neueren[1] sind wenigstens interessanter als die früheren. 4. Wegen besserer Nachricht aus der Heimat finden Sie mich in viel heiterer Stimmung als gestern. 5. Kennen Sie keine kürzere Methode, Deutsch zu lernen? 6. Es giebt freilich weniger gründliche Methoden; am Ende sind sie aber vielleicht lieber länger als kürzer. 7. Auf beiden Seiten der Straße sieht man die schönsten und seltensten Bäume. 8. Es giebt wohl schönere Mädchen als meine jüngste Schwester, doch kein liebenswürdigeres. 9. Wer ist der ältere der beiden Knaben? 10. Von den vielen Damen meiner Bekanntschaft ist sie ohne Zweifel die stolzeste und unfreundlichste. 11. Das weißt du natürlich besser als wir anderen, denn du kennst sie aufs beste. 12. Wo findet man reichere und ärmere Leute als in dieser großen Stadt? 13. Von den Universitätsfreunden kenne ich Karl am längsten, Fritz am besten. 14. Von den späteren Dramen Schillers haben zwei berühmte Frauen als Heldinnen, nämlich „Maria Stuart" und „Die Jungfrau von Orleans".

EXERCISE XX f.

1. Are your[2] brothers older or younger than you? 2. I have two older and two younger brothers. 3. We have the longest days of the year in June, the shortest in December. 4. As eldest daughter she has handsomer clothes than her[2] sisters. 5. This is probably the highest point in the city.

a country always makes travel[23] far more interesting. 8. We were back in London (the) end (of) August[24] and went at once to Paris. 9. Well,[25] what do you think of the famous "capital of the world"? 10. It does not please me particularly well, but perhaps my sympathies are not French enough. 11. For my part[26] I find [the] Paris life altogether too fast; to be sure, I love an exceedingly quiet life, and that is to be found in no[27] great city. 12. After all,[28] the main reason[29] was probably the foreign language; that always makes a great difference. 13. In the matter of language, at least, the English and the American people are one[30]; with the French language the case is quite different.[31]

VOCABULARY.

Betreff', *m. s.* (*no pl.*), regard, respect; in betreff (*with gen.*), in the matter of, so far as . . . is concerned.
bilden, *v.*, form, fashion; cultivate, refine.
drama'tisch, *adj.*, *dramatic.*
drei, *num.*, **three.**
englisch, *adj.*, **English.**
französisch, *adj.*, French.
Gegend, *f. w.*, region, country.
geschichtlich, *adj.*, historical.
Geschmack, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä, *rare*), taste, [**-smack**].
Hauptstadt, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), capital, [**head-stead**, i. e., city].
Jahrhundert, *n. s. 2*, century, [**year-hundred**].
Kathedra'le, *f. w.*, *cathedral.*
Kutsche, *f. w.*, *coach.*
leider, *adv.*, unfortunately, alas!
lieben, *v.*, **love.**
lieb haben, *v.*, like, be fond of, [**have lief**].
loben, *v.*, praise, [**love**].
Malerei', *f. w.*, painting.
merken, *v.*, notice, **mark.**
möglich, *adj.*, possible, (from mögen).
rasch, *adj.*, fast, [**rash**].
Recht, *n. s. 2*, **right.**
richten, *v.*, judge, (from recht).
sofort', *adv.*, at once.
Sympathie', *f. w.*, *sympathy.*
Wunder, *n. s. 1*, **wonder.**
zurück, *adv.*, back, [**-ridge**].

NOTES.—[1] **Berlin**; see p. 84, n. 3.—[2] **Leipziger**; for adject. from names of towns, see § 109. 2.—[3] **Hauptstadt**; Haupt, *head*, is the first element of several compounds, with the force of an adj., *chief, principal*; cf. Hauptmann, *captain*; Hauptwort, *noun*, etc.—[4] **längere Zeit**, see p. 82, n. 1.—[5] **Dresden**; pronounce with long e in the penult.—[6] **habe . . . am liebsten**, see p. 84, n. 5.—[7] **am meisten interessante**; note that adverbial comparison is not obligatory, as with the corresponding Eng. word; interessanteste is equally correct; cf. § 295. —[8] **Kunstgeschmack**, *artistic taste*.—[9] **Wunderschönes**; wunder- is the first element of numerous compound adjectives and has adverbial force, *wonderfully, marvellously*.—[10] **längst**; superl. of lang used adverbially, = *long since, for a long time*.—[11] **allerliebst**, *most charming*; this is the only exception to the rule in § 111. 4, *a*; cf. § 294. 1, *a*.—[12] **noch immer**, *to this day*; lit. *still always*; cf. p. 41, n. 7.—[13] **mir**; ethical dat., cf. § 259. 4; omit in transl.—[14] **ein klein Paris** (pronounce to rhyme with *police*); the quotation is from *Faust* (I, 2171–2); for the uninflected adj., see § 286. 1 and § 233. 3.—[15] **I presume**, wohl, to follow verb.—[16] **the only ones**, die einzigen.—[17] **cathedral-churches**, Kathedralkirchen.—[18] **Middle-England**, Mittelengland.—[19] **by**, mit.—[20] **a most charming**, eine höchst reizende; one could not say eine reizendste.—[21] **besides**, außerdem.—[22] Use generic art.—[23] **travel**, die Reise; **country**, not Gegend. —[24] **the end of August**, Ende August; see § 266. 2, *b*; place immediately after verb.—[25] **well**, nun, not wohl.—[26] **for my part**, see p. 84, n. 7.—[27] **no**, kein, which in the sing. is decl. like ein.—[28] **after all**, am Ende.—[29] **main reason**, Hauptgrund; cf. n. 4.—[30] **one**, ein einziges, agreeing with Volk.—[31] **different**, anders.

EXERCISE XXI e.

1. Haben Sie die neueren[1] Sprachen lieber[2] als die alten? 2. Das sage ich nicht, denn ich lese die lateinische und die griechische Dichtung mit großem Vergnügen. 3. Für mein Teil[3] habe ich die Alten[4] nicht so lieb; ich lese Latein nun seit zehn Jahren und brauche das Wörterbuch noch immer[5] alle zwei Minuten. 4. Deutsch und Französisch sind freilich viel leichter, denn[6] nach drei Jahren gründlichen Studiums kann man schon ganz geläufig lesen. 5. Die Kenntnis des Lateinischen ist doch für das richtige Verständnis der englischen Sprache höchst wichtig. 6. Die letzten Seiten des Gedichts finde ich äußerst schön; die ersteren Teile aber meistens langweilig. 7. Ich kenne nichts Schöneres

auf dem Lande als diese prächtigen Wälder im Herbste. 8. Die späteren Werke eines Schriftstellers sind nicht immer seine[7] besten; sie enthalten freilich reifere, doch auch weniger frische Gedanken. 9. Die französische Grammatik ist leichter als die deutsche; am allerleichtesten[8] ist aber die englische. 10. Die Aussprache der letzteren Sprache ist aber höchst schwer. 11. Der Lehrer redete aufs freundlichste[9] mit den Knaben über die Studien des nächsten Jahres. 12. Jungen, seid vor allem ehrlich! Ich weiß nichts Wichtigeres zu sagen. 13. Die besten Äpfel finden sich[10] meistens auf den höheren Zweigen. 14. Die Zimmer im oberen Teil des Hauses haben schönere Luft und besseres Licht als die anderen, sind aber im Sommer wärmer, im Winter kälter.

EXERCISE XXIf.

1. Yonder is the highest building in the city, but not the largest. 2. Your dearest friends say I am right[11] in this most important[12] matter. 3. I give you[13] my heartiest wishes; I have nothing better. 4. In such matters he has the quickest and truest insight. 5. This actress is always at her best[14] in [the] Schiller[15] rôles. 6. There is[16] no more honorable man in this whole city than my old friend, Herr[17] Dr. Kramer. 7. The new teacher is a youngish[18] man with a light[19] beard, isn't he? 8. Have you no fresher eggs than these? I want[20] the freshest in the store. 9. Many people write much better than they speak. 10. She sings the part of Elsa in Wagner's *Lohengrin* very well, to be sure, but I like her best[21] in the lighter rôles of [the] French and Italian opera. 11. Of Goethe's works *Hermann und Dorothea* is perhaps the dearest to the[22] German people; it is, of course, not the most famous. 12. A most interesting[23] point in his speech is his thorough knowledge of German politics. 13. This is certainly the least instructive[24] of the author's works.

VOCABULARY.

Aussprache, *f. w.*, pronunciation.
dir, *pron.* (*dat.*), to you, for you.
ehrlich, *adj.*, honorable.
geläufig, *adj.*, ready, fluent; *as adv.*, fluently.
griechisch, *adj.*, *Greek.*
herzlich, *adj.*, heart-y.
italie'nisch, *adj.*, *Italian.*
Latein, *n.*, *Latin.*
latei'nisch, *adj.*, Latin.
ober, *adj.*, upper.
Vergnügen, *n. s. 1*, pleasure, enjoyment.
Verständnis, *n. s. 2*, understanding, comprehension.
Zweig, *m. s. 2*, branch, bough, twig.

NOTES.—[1] **neueren**, *modern.*—[2] **Haben . . . lieber**, *like . . . better;* cf. p. 84, n. 5.—[3] **Für mein Teil**, see p. 84, n. 7.—[4] **die Alten**, *the ancients.*—[5] **noch immer**; see Ex. XXI c, n. 12.—[6] **denn**, see p. 62, n. 3.—[7] **seine**; poss. pron. are decl. in pl. like strong adj.—[8] **am allerleichtesten**, *easiest of all;* cf. § 294. 1.—[9] **aufs freundlichste**; *most kindly;* absolute superl. of the adv., cf. § 375. 2.—[10] **finden sich**, *are found;* lit., *find themselves.*—[11] **I am right**, ich habe recht.—[12] **this most important**; relative or absolute superl.?—[13] **you**, dir.—[14] **at her best**, am besten.—[15] **Schiller**, Schiller'schen; cf. §. 390. 11.—[16] **there is**, es giebt, with acc.—[17] **my old friend**, **Herr**; case? see §§ 270, 271. 1, *b.*—[18] **youngish**, cf. p. 82, n. 1.—[19] **light**, hell.—[20] **want**, wünschen.—[21] **like . . . best**, see p. 84, n. 5.—[22] **to the**; express by dat.; place *to . . . people* before *perhaps.*—[23] see p. 84, n. 13.—[24] **the least instructive**, das am wenigsten lehrreiche.

NUMERALS.

EXERCISE XXII b.

[Cf. Reading Lesson, p. 87.]

1. In the public-schools[1] of Germany the instruction is free, but in the *Gymnasium* one has something to pay. 2. A *Gymnasium* in Germany is a kind of preparatory-school,[2] not a building for[3] athletics. 3. There is the *Gymnasium* proper,[4] for the study of[5] ancient and modern[6] languages, mathematics,[7] history, literature, etc.[8] 4. In the so-called *Realgymnasium* mathematics, the natural

sciences,[9] Latin and especially [the] modern languages are the chief studies.[10] 5. The course of the German *Gymnasium* lasts nine years.[11] 6. The six classes are called, after the Latin,[12] *Prima*, *Secunda*, *Tertia*, etc.; the lowest class is the *Sexta*, the highest the *Prima*. 7. The pupil remains two years in each of the three higher classes, one year in each of the three lower. 8. In the third year of the course, for example, he is in the *Quarta;* in the fourth year he is in the Lower-*Tertia*[13]; in the fifth year, the Upper-*Tertia*. 9. The German schools have two half-[14] holidays a[15] week, namely Wednesday and Saturday afternoon. 10. In the upper classes the pupil has on an[16] average six hours on each of the other days. 11. School[17] begins very early in the morning, in summer at 7 o'clock, in winter one hour later. 12. From 11 or 12 o'clock on[18] there is a recess of two or three hours. 13. The vacation amounts in all to about one fifth of the year. 14. The most important holidays are Easter, Whitsuntide and Christmas, besides several special holidays, as for example[19] the emperor's birthday.

VOCABULARY.

Art, *f. w.*, kind, sort.
Beispiel, *n. s. 2*, example.
besonder, *adj.*, special.
betragen, *v.*, amount to.
bezahlen, *v.*, pay.
dauern, *v.*, last, continue.
Durchschnitt, *m. s. 2*, average.
Feiertag, *m. s. 2*, holiday.
Gymnasium, *n. mx.*, *Gymnasium.*
heißen, *v.*, be called, [**hight**].
Kaiser, *m. s. 1*, emperor, [*Caesar*].
Klasse, *f. w.*, *class.*
Kursus, *m.* (*pl.* Kursus *or* Kurse), *course.*
Mathematik', *f. w.*, *mathematics.*
Mittwoch, *m. s. 2*, Wednesday, [**mid-week**].
Ostern, *pl.*, **Easter.**
Pause, *f. w.*, *pause*, recess.
Pfingsten, *pl.*, Whitsuntide, *Pentecost.*
Samstag, *m. s. 2*, Saturday.
sogenannt', *adj.*, so-called.
Turnübung, *f. w.*, gymnastics, athletics.

Uhr, *f. w.*, clock, [*hour*].
unter, *adj.*, lower, [**under**].
Un'terricht, *m. s.* (*no pl.*), instruction.
Vorbereitung, *f. w.*, preparation, [**fore-ready-**].
Weih'nachten, *pl.*, Christmas.
Wissenschaft, *f. w.*, science.

NOTES.—[1] **public-schools**, Volksschulen.—[2] **a kind of . . . school**, eine Art Vorbereitungsschule; note construction with Art, cf. § 246. 1, *a*.—[3] **for**, zur.—[4] **proper**, eigentlich, to be used attributively after art.—[5] **of**, express by gen. of def. art.—[6] **modern**; = *newer*.—[7] **mathematics**, see p. 54, n. 3.—[8] **etc.**, u. s. w. = und so weiter, *and so forth*.—[9] **natural sciences**, Naturwissenschaften.—[10] **chief studies**, Hauptstudien; cf. Ex. XXI c, n. 3.—[11] acc. of duration of time, cf. § 266. 3.—[12] **after the Latin**, nach dem Lateinischen.—[13] **in the Lower-Tertia**, in der Unter-Tertia; **Upper-Tertia**, Ober-Tertia; cf. p. 88, n. 2.—[14] **half**, express by attrib. adj.—[15] **a**; Ger. idiom requires def. art., cf. § 228.—[16] **on an**, im.—[17] Use generic art.—[18] **on**, an.—[19] **as for example**, wie zum Beispiel.

EXERCISE XXII c.

1. The year has fifty-two weeks, the week seven days, the day twenty-four hours and the hour sixty minutes. 2. Seven times[1] fifty-two, however, is only three hundred and sixty-four, so[2] the year really consists of fifty-two weeks and one day. 3. The Spanish-American[3] war lasted one hundred and fourteen days, namely from the 21st of[4] April until the[5] 12th of August. 4. One of Schiller's dramas, "Die Jungfrau von Orleans," consists of a prologue and five acts. 5. The prologue contains four hundred and thirty-two lines, the entire drama three thousand five hundred and forty-four. 6. The 14th of December, 1899, was the one hundredth anniversary of the death[6] of Washington. 7. Six-sevenths of forty-two is thirty-six. 8. A hundred and twenty-eight and eighty-seven is two hundred and fifteen. 9. The birthday of the Emperor William[7] is the 27th of January. 10. On the 4th of July we celebrate the birth of this country. 11. The 28th of August, 1899, was the one hundred and fiftieth anniversary of the birth of Goethe. 12. The city of New York lies on[8] an island between two rivers. 13. The island has

a length of fourteen miles and an average[9] breadth of one and a half miles. 14. My cousin showed me[10] his new house; it is in [the] Seventeenth Street, the third house from the park. 15. One of the servants always remains in the house during the summer.

VOCABULARY.

April', *m. s. 2, April.*
Aufzug, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), act, [**up-tug**, i. e. of the curtain].
Breite, *f. w.*, breadth, [**bread**-th].
Diener, *m. s. 1*, servant.
Februar', *m. s. 2, February.*
feiern, *v.*, celebrate.
Insel, *f. w.*, island.
Jahrestag, *m. s. 2*, anniversary, [**year-day**].
Ju'li, *m. s.* (*no pl.*), *July.*
Länge, *f. w.*, length, [**leng**-th].
Prolog', *m. s. 2, prologue.*
während, *prep.* (*gen.*), during.
zeigen, *v.*, show, [**teach**].

NOTES.—[1] **seven times**, siebenmal; cf. p. 88, n. 12.—[2] **so**, also, to follow verb.—[3] **Spanish-American**, see § 109. 5; **Spanish** = spanisch.—[4] **the 21st of**; prep. is omitted in Ger., cf. § 298. 1.—[5] **until the**, bis zum.—[6] **of the death**, vom Tode, rather than des Todes.—[7] **of the Emperor William**, see § 285. 1 and *a.*—[8] **on**, auf.—[9] **average**, im Durchschnitt, to follow 'breadth.'—[10] **showed me**, zeigte mir.

EXERCISE XXIII a.

[Cf. Colloquy, p. 88.]

1. At most[1] American universities the year is divided into two or three terms, in all[2] thirty-five to[3] forty weeks. 2. Several universities have besides a summer-term of five or six weeks. 3. Leipzig was the scene[4] of a great battle in[5] October, 1813, the so-called "Battle of the Nations."[6] 4. At what time[7] do you expect your sister? About half past seven?[8] 5. That is hard to tell; perhaps she will come at a quarter past seven,[9] perhaps not until a quarter to nine. 6. Is she coming by boat[10] or by rail? 7. By rail; I shall go[11] to the station in a few minutes and remain there until about ten o'clock. 8. The last *express*[12] from New York comes at ten minutes before[13] ten,

doesn't it? 9. Oh, no; there is another[14] train at twenty-five minutes after[15] eleven. 10. So there are[16] two stations in the city? I knew only of the one, the Central Station.[17] 11. Yes, there is another, about a mile and a half[18] from here. 12. Why is your sister coming home before the end of the school-year?[19] Is she not to finish[20] the course? 13. Oh, yes, she remains only till the[21] 18th. A week from to-morrow[22] is the twenty-fifth anniversary of my parents' marriage, and we are making preparations for[23] a grand family-festival.[24] 14. I am only in my[25] nineteenth year, but Karl is nearly two years and a half[26] older than I. Marie is the youngest of the family.

VOCABULARY.

ach, *interj.*, oh, ah.
außerdem, *adv.*, besides.
Bahnhof, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ö), station.
central', *adj.*, *central.*
Dampfer, *m. s. 1*, steamer, boat.
Eisenbahn, *f. w.*, railway, railroad, [**iron-**].
erst, *adv.*, first, not until.
Fest, *n. s. 2*, festival, *feast.*
fragen, *v.*, ask.
Heirat, *f. w.*, marriage.
Schlacht, *f. w.*, battle, [**slaught-er**].
Termin', *m. s. 2*, *term.*
un'gefähr, *adv.*, about.
vollen'den, *v.*, complete, finish, [**-end-**].
wußte, *v.*, knew; *pret. of* wissen.
zerfal'len (in, *acc.*), be divided (into); *3. sing.*, zerfällt.
Zug, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), train, [**tug**].

NOTES.—[1] **at most**, auf den meisten.—[2] **in all**, im ganzen.—[3] **to**, bis.—[4] **scene**, Schauplatz.—[5] **in**, im.—[6] **Battle of the Nations**, Völkerschlacht.—[7] **at what time**, um wie viel Uhr; cf. p. 89, n. 1.—[8] **half past seven**, halb acht; cf. p. 89, n. 2.—[9] **at a quarter past seven**, um ein Viertel acht; cf. p. 89, n. 3.—[10] **by boat**, mit dem Dampfer; cf. p. 89, n. 4.—[11] **shall go . . . remain**, use pres.; cf. p. 62, n. 5.—[12] **express** (train), Schnellzug, lit. *fast train;* to *lightning express* corresponds Blitzzug.—[13] **before**, vor.—[14] **another**, noch ein; *another* in the sense of *an additional one* is always noch ein; ein anderer means *a different one.* 'Bring me another glass' would thus be transl. . . . noch ein Glas or . . . ein anderes Glas accord-

ing to meaning intended.—[15] **after**, nach.—[16] **so there are**, es sind also. —[17] **Central Station**, Centralbahnhof.—[18] **a mile and a half**, anderthalb Meilen; cf. § 118. 3, *b*.—[19] **school-year**, Schuljahr.—[20] **is she not to finish**, vollendet sie . . . nicht?—[21] **till the**, bis zum.—[22] **a week from tomorrow**, morgen über acht Tage; but *two weeks* would be über vierzehn Tage. —[23] **for**, zu.—[24] **family-festival**, Familienfest; for Familien- (which is gen. sing.) cf. § 400. 2, *b*; **grand** = groß.—[25] **in my**, im.—[26] **two years and a half**, see p. 90, n. 15, and cf. § 118. 8, *b*.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

EXERCISE XXIV b.

[Cf. Reading Lesson, p. 93.]

1. Your[1] most welcome letter of the 28th of last month[2] came to hand[3] a few days ago. 2. I have been[4] greatly concerned[5] about your health for several months now[4]; the letters are no longer so frequent and cheerful as formerly. 3. You say I need not be anxious[6] about it, but I fear you perhaps[7] do not tell me the whole truth. 4. Your adventure with the bicycle worries me greatly[8]; from your[9] letters, to be sure, it seems quite insignificant. 5. Was not the accident, however, really a pretty serious[10] one? Please tell me more exact details[11] about it. 6. Things are going[12] pretty well with us[13] at home; your father was sick for a few days last[14] week, but now feels[15] quite well again. 7. I had a most unwelcome visit a week ago today.[16] 8. I was sitting[17] with the children and showing[17] them picture-books. 9. All at once[18] I heard (some one) knock[19] at the door. 10. I opened (the door) myself and was astonished to see a policeman before me. 11. "Madam,"[20] he asked, "have you a servant[21] by name of[22] Minna Engel?" 12. "Yes, certainly," I answered, "but what have you to do with her?" 13. "The girl probably knows[23] well enough," said he; "I am going to take[24] her along (with me). 14. She is a thief[25] and goes out to[26] service only in order to[27] steal. 15. She probably has *many* things of yours[28] already in her[29] trunk. Just let

us look,[30] please." 16. We went to her[29] room, and there were about a dozen articles-of-clothing,[31] seven silver spoons, five forks, and a ring of your sister's.[32]

VOCABULARY.

A'benteuer, *n. s. 1, adventure.*
ängſtigen (ſich), *v.*, torment one's self, be anxious.
ant'worten, *v.*, **answer**; *pret.* antwortete.
bang(e), *adv.*, anxiously; bange machen, *with dat.*, to trouble, worry.
befinden (ſich), *v.*, **find** (one's self), 'do.'
darüber, *adv.*, about that, about it, [**thereover**].
Dienſt, *m. s. 2*, service.
Dutzend, *n. s. 2, dozen.*
ein'mal, *adv.*, once; einmal', just, pray.
erſtaunt', *ppl.*, astonished.
Gabel, *f. w.*, fork.
genau', *adj.*, accurate, exact.
häufig, *adj.*, frequent; *adv.*, often, [**heap-**].
Kleidung, *f. w.*, **clothing**, apparel.
klopfen, *v.*, knock; *pret.*, klopfte.
Koffer, *m. s. 1*, trunk, [*coffer*].
Löffel, *m. s. 1*, spoon, [to **lap**].
öffnen, *v.*, **open**; *pret.*, öffnete.
Poliziſt', *m. w.*, *policeman.*
ſcheinen, *v.*, **seem**, **shine.**
ſilbern, *adj.*, **silver.**
ſitzen, *v.*, **sit**; *pret.*, ſaß.
ſtehlen, *v.*, **steal.**
Stück, *n. s. 2*, piece.
un'bedeutend, *adj.*, insignificant.
Un'fall, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), accident.
un'willkommen, *adj.*, **unwelcome.**

NOTES.—[1] **Your**, Dein, the possessive corresponding to Du, the proper pronoun in this exercise, which may be thought of as part of a letter to the son abroad; cf. p. 94, n. 5. Note that it is based on the Reading Lesson, Ex. XXIV.—[2] **of last month**, see p. 94, n. 2.—[3] **came to hand**, see p. 94, n. 3.—[4] **I have been for . . . now**, ich bin nun ſeit . . .—[5] **greatly concerned**, in großer Unruhe.—[6] **I need not be anxious**, ich brauche mich nicht zu ängſtigen; cf. p. 94, n. 5.—[7] **perhaps**; position?—[8] **worries me greatly**, macht mir ſehr bange.—[9] **from your**, aus deinen.—[10] **serious**, ſchwer.—[11] **more exact details**, Genaueres; **tell**; 2. pers. sing. imperative is formed by adding e to the stem.—[12] **things are going**

geht.—[13] **with us**, bei uns.—[14] **last**, vorig.—[15] **but now feels**, befindet sich aber jetzt.—[16] **a week ago to-day**, heute vor acht Tagen; cf. Ex. XXIII a, n. 22. [17] **was sitting . . . showing**, saß . . . zeigte.—[18] **all at once**, auf ein'mal. —[19] **knock**; inf. without zu may be used (here without subject) as object of hörte; cf. §§ 366. 2; 187.—[20] **Madam**, Ger. equiv. here is Gnädige Frau; gnädig = *gracious*.—[21] **servant**(-girl), Dienstmädchen.—[22] **by name of**, Namens.—[23] **knows**, weiß.—[24] See p. 62, n. 5.—[25] **thief**, Diebin. —[26] **out to**, in den.—[27] **in order to**, um zu.—[28] **of yours**, von Ihnen.—[29] **her**, ihrem.—[30] **just . . . look**, sehen wir einmal'.—[31] **articles-of-clothing**, Kleidungsstücke.—[32] Express simply with von.

EXERCISE XXIV c.

1. The purse does not belong to you; it belongs to **me**. 2. The children find themselves without a relative[1] in the world. 3. That is not your[2] affair; you have nothing to do with it. 4. They are no friends of mine[3]; I have nothing to do with them. 5. The girl does not live here; I do not know her at all. 6. The letter already has many bad mistakes; you are not writing[4] it carefully enough. 7. The coat does not fit me at all well; the tailor may[5] keep it. 8. There are four of us[6] and it is not yet late; let us go[7] through the woods. 9. His address was very tedious, especially the first part of it. 10. I certainly put[8] the purse in my pocket, but I do not find it now. 11. He has a great number of books,[9] but there are[10] few novels among them. 12. I see myself the great importance of this[11] step. 13. We are good friends, are we not? 14. I hope you mean me also, for we certainly know each other very well. 15. Mother is probably coming next Saturday[12]; the children are coming with her. 16. I am building myself[13] a new boat and expect much pleasure with[14] it this summer.[15]

Vocabulary.

behalten, *v.*, keep, retain, [-hold].
Beutel, *m. s. 1*, purse.
darun'ter, *adv.*, under it *or* that, among them, [**thereunder**].

davon', *adv.*, of it *or* that, from it *or* that.
einan'der, *pron.* (*indecl.*), each other, **one another.**
passen, *v.* (*dat.*), fit.
Roman', *m. s. 2*, novel, *romance.*
Schritt, *m. s. 2*, step.
selbst, *pron.*, **self**, myself, yourself, etc.
Sonnabend, *m. s. 2*, Saturday, [**eve of Sun**-day].
sorgfältig, *adj.*, careful.
stecken, *v.*, put, **stick.**
Wichtigkeit, *f. w.*, importance, **weighti**-ness.

NOTES.—[1] **relative**; see Ex. XVIII f, n. 3.—[2] **your**, deine, if 'you' = du; Ihre, if 'you' = Sie.—[3] **of mine**, von mir.—[4] **you are . . . writing**, du schreibst.—[5] **may**, kann or mag.—[6] **there are four of us**, es sind unser vier.—[7] **let us go**, gehen wir; cf. p. 43, n. 4.—[8] **put**, steckte.—[9] **a great . . . books**; see p. 54, n. 1.—[10] **there are**, es sind.—[11] **this**; dies is decl. like a strong adj.—[12] **next Saturday**; acc. of time when, § 266. 2. —[13] **myself** is here a reflexive pron., not intensive as in sentence 12. —[14] **with**, here = von.—[15] **this summer**, acc. of time.

PERSONAL AND POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

EXERCISE XXV b.

[Cf. Reading Lesson, p. 97.]

1. I recently had[1] an agreeable proof of the honesty and cleverness of the Leipzig[2] police. 2. One morning[3] about eleven o'clock I was sitting at my table writing[4] letters. 3. All at once there was a knock,[5] and before my door stood[6] two policemen. 4. "What is your name, sir[7]?" asked one of them,[8] "and where were you last evening?" 5. I was naturally very much[9] astonished at[10] his second question, but told[11] him the place. 6. "How much money have you in your purse at[12] this moment?" asked the other. 7. "I think about seventy-five marks," said I, putting[13] my hand in my pocket for[14] my purse, but it was not there. 8. They looked me[15] shrewdly in the eye all the while[16] and evidently noted[17] my look of genuine[18] astonishment. 9. "This is your property, I presume," said one of them, handing[19] me a small purse. 10. "It

sciences,[9] Latin and especially [the] modern languages are the chief studies.[10] 5. The course of the German *Gymnasium* lasts nine years.[11] 6. The six classes are called, after the Latin,[12] *Prima*, *Secunda*, *Tertia*, etc.; the lowest class is the *Sexta*, the highest the *Prima*. 7. The pupil remains two years in each of the three higher classes, one year in each of the three lower. 8. In the third year of the course, for example, he is in the *Quarta;* in the fourth year he is in the Lower-*Tertia*[13]; in the fifth year, the Upper-*Tertia*. 9. The German schools have two half-[14] holidays a[15] week, namely Wednesday and Saturday afternoon. 10. In the upper classes the pupil has on an[16] average six hours on each of the other days. 11. School[17] begins very early in the morning, in summer at 7 o'clock, in winter one hour later. 12. From 11 or 12 o'clock on[18] there is a recess of two or three hours. 13. The vacation amounts in all to about one fifth of the year. 14. The most important holidays are Easter, Whitsuntide and Christmas, besides several special holidays, as for example[19] the emperor's birthday.

VOCABULARY.

Art, *f. w.*, kind, sort.
Beispiel, *n. s. 2*, example.
besonder, *adj.*, special.
betragen, *v.*, amount to.
bezahlen, *v.*, pay.
dauern, *v.*, last, continue.
Durchschnitt, *m. s. 2*, average.
Feiertag, *m. s. 2*, holiday.
Gymnasium, *n. mx.*, *Gymnasium.*
heißen, *v.*, be called, [**hight**].
Kaiser, *m. s. 1*, emperor, [*Caesar*].
Klasse, *f. w.*, *class.*
Kursus, *m.* (*pl.* Kursus *or* Kurse), *course.*
Mathematik', *f. w.*, *mathematics.*
Mittwoch, *m. s. 2*, Wednesday, [**mid-week**].
Ostern, *pl.*, **Easter.**
Pause, *f. w.*, *pause*, recess.
Pfingsten, *pl.*, Whitsuntide, *Pentecost.*
Samstag, *m. s. 2*, Saturday.
sogenannt', *adj.*, so-called.
Turnübung, *f. w.*, gymnastics, athletics.

Uhr, *f. w.*, clock, [*hour*].
unter, *adj.*, lower, [**under**].
Un'terricht, *m. s.* (*no pl.*), instruction.
Vorbereitung, *f. w.*, preparation, [**fore-ready-**].
Weih'nachten, *pl.*, Christmas.
Wissenschaft, *f. w.*, science.

NOTES.—[1] **public-schools**, Volksschulen.—[2] **a kind of . . . school**, eine Art Vorbereitungsschule; note construction with Art, cf. § 246. 1, *a.*—[3] **for**, zur.—[4] **proper**, eigentlich, to be used attributively after art.—[5] **of**, express by gen. of def. art.—[6] **modern**; = *newer.*—[7] **mathematics**, see p. 54, n. 3.—[8] **etc.**, u. s. w. = und so weiter, *and so forth.*—[9] **natural sciences**, Naturwissenschaften.—[10] **chief studies**, Hauptstudien; cf. Ex. XXI c, n. 3.—[11] acc. of duration of time, cf. § 266. 3.—[12] **after the Latin**, nach dem Lateinischen.—[13] **in the Lower-Tertia**, in der Unter-Tertia; **Upper-Tertia**, Ober-Tertia; cf. p. 88, n. 2.—[14] **half**, express by attrib. adj.—[15] **a**; Ger. idiom requires def. art., cf. § 228.—[16] **on an**, im.—[17] Use generic art.—[18] **on**, an.—[19] **as for example**, wie zum Beispiel.

EXERCISE XXII c.

1. The year has fifty-two weeks, the week seven days, the day twenty-four hours and the hour sixty minutes. 2. Seven times[1] fifty-two, however, is only three hundred and sixty-four, so[2] the year really consists of fifty-two weeks and one day. 3. The Spanish-American[3] war lasted one hundred and fourteen days, namely from the 21st of[4] April until the[5] 12th of August. 4. One of Schiller's dramas, "Die Jungfrau von Orleans," consists of a prologue and five acts. 5. The prologue contains four hundred and thirty-two lines, the entire drama three thousand five hundred and forty-four. 6. The 14th of December, 1899, was the one hundredth anniversary of the death[6] of Washington. 7. Six-sevenths of forty-two is thirty-six. 8. A hundred and twenty-eight and eighty-seven is two hundred and fifteen. 9. The birthday of the Emperor William[7] is the 27th of January. 10. On the 4th of July we celebrate the birth of this country. 11. The 28th of August, 1899, was the one hundred and fiftieth anniversary of the birth of Goethe. 12. The city of New York lies on[8] an island between two rivers. 13. The island has

a length of fourteen miles and an average[9] breadth of one and a half miles. 14. My cousin showed me[10] his new house; it is in [the] Seventeenth Street, the third house from the park. 15. One of the servants always remains in the house during the summer.

VOCABULARY.

April', *m. s. 2, April.*
Aufzug, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), act, [**up-tug**, i. e. of the curtain].
Breite, *f. w.*, breadth, [**bread**-th].
Diener, *m. s. 1*, servant.
Februar', *m. s. 2, February.*
feiern, *v.*, celebrate.
Insel, *f. w.*, island.
Jahrestag, *m. s. 2*, anniversary, [**year-day**].
Ju'li, *m. s.* (*no pl.*), *July.*
Länge, *f. w.*, length, [**leng**-th].
Prolog', *m. s. 2, prologue.*
während, *prep.* (*gen.*), during.
zeigen, *v.*, show, [**teach**].

NOTES.—[1] **seven times**, siebenmal; cf. p. 88, n. 12.—[2] **so**, also, to follow verb.—[3] **Spanish-American**, see § 109. 5; **Spanish** = spanisch.—[4] **the 21st of**; prep. is omitted in Ger., cf. § 298. 1.—[5] **until the**, bis zum.—[6] **of the death**, vom Tode, rather than des Todes.—[7] **of the Emperor William**, see § 285. 1 and *a.*—[8] **on**, auf.—[9] **average**, im Durchschnitt, to follow 'breadth.'—[10] **showed me**, zeigte mir.

EXERCISE XXIII a.

[Cf. Colloquy, p. 88.]

1. At most[1] American universities the year is divided into two or three terms, in all[2] thirty-five to[3] forty weeks. 2. Several universities have besides a summer-term of five or six weeks. 3. Leipzig was the scene[4] of a great battle in[5] October, 1813, the so-called "Battle of the Nations."[6] 4. At what time[7] do you expect your sister? About half past seven?[8] 5. That is hard to tell; perhaps she will come at a quarter past seven,[9] perhaps not until a quarter to nine. 6. Is she coming by boat[10] or by rail? 7. By rail; I shall go[11] to the station in a few minutes and remain there until about ten o'clock. 8. The last express[12] from New York comes at ten minutes before[13] ten,

doesn't it? 9. Oh, no; there is another[14] train at twenty-five minutes after[15] eleven. 10. So there are[16] two stations in the city? I knew only of the one, the Central Station.[17] 11. Yes, there is another, about a mile and a half[18] from here. 12. Why is your sister coming home before the end of the school-year?[19] Is she not to finish[20] the course? 13. Oh, yes, she remains only till the[21] 18th. A week from to-morrow[22] is the twenty-fifth anniversary of my parents' marriage, and we are making preparations for[23] a grand family-festival.[24] 14. I am only in my[25] nineteenth year, but Karl is nearly two years and a half[26] older than I. Marie is the youngest of the family.

VOCABULARY.

ach, *interj.*, oh, ah.
außerdem, *adv.*, besides.
Bahnhof, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ö), station.
central', *adj.*, *central.*
Dampfer, *m. s. 1*, steamer, boat.
Eisenbahn, *f. w.*, railway, railroad, [**iron**-].
erst, *adv.*, first, not until.
Fest, *n. s. 2*, festival, *feast.*
fragen, *v.*, ask.
Heirat, *f. w.*, marriage.
Schlacht, *f. w.*, battle, [**slaught**-er].
Termin', *m. s. 2*, *term.*
un'gefähr, *adv.*, about.
vollen'den, *v.*, complete, finish, [-**end**-].
wußte, *v.*, knew; *pret. of* wissen.
zerfal'len (in, *acc.*), be divided (into); *3. sing.*, zerfällt.
Zug, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), train, [**tug**].

NOTES.—[1] **at most**, auf den meisten.—[2] **in all**, im ganzen.—[3] **to**, bis.—[4] **scene**, Schauplatz.—[5] **in**, im.—[6] **Battle of the Nations**, Völkerschlacht.—[7] **at what time**, um wie viel Uhr; cf. p. 89, n. 1.—[8] **half past seven**, halb acht; cf. p. 89, n. 2.—[9] **at a quarter past seven**, um ein Viertel acht; cf. p. 89, n. 3.—[10] **by boat**, mit dem Dampfer; cf. p. 89, n. 4.—[11] **shall go . . . remain**, use pres.; cf. p. 62, n. 5.—[12] **express** (train), Schnellzug, lit. *fast train;* to *lightning express* corresponds Blitzzug.—[13] **before**, vor.—[14] **another**, noch ein; *another* in the sense of *an additional one* is always noch ein; ein anderer means *a different one.* 'Bring me another glass' would thus be transl. . . . noch ein Glas or . . . ein anderes Glas accord-

ing to meaning intended.—[15] **after**, nach.—[16] **so there are**, es sind also. —[17] **Central Station**, Centralbahnhof.—[18] **a mile and a half**, anderthalb Meilen; cf. § 118. 3, *b*.—[19] **school-year**, Schuljahr.—[20] **is she not to finish**, vollendet sie . . . nicht?—[21] **till the**, bis zum.—[22] **a week from tomorrow**, morgen über acht Tage; but *two weeks* would be über vierzehn Tage. —[23] **for**, zu.—[24] **family-festival**, Familienfest; for Familien- (which is gen. sing.) cf. § 400. 2, *b*; **grand** = groß.—[25] **in my**, im.—[26] **two years and a half**, see p. 90, n. 15, and cf. § 118. 3, *b*.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

EXERCISE XXIV b.

[Cf. Reading Lesson, p. 93.]

1. Your[1] most welcome letter of the 28th of last month[2] came to hand[3] a few days ago. 2. I have been[4] greatly concerned[5] about your health for several months now[4]; the letters are no longer so frequent and cheerful as formerly. 3. You say I need not be anxious[6] about it, but I fear you perhaps[7] do not tell me the whole truth. 4. Your adventure with the bicycle worries me greatly[8]; from your[9] letters, to be sure, it seems quite insignificant. 5. Was not the accident, however, really a pretty serious[10] one? Please tell me more exact details[11] about it. 6. Things are going[12] pretty well with us[13] at home; your father was sick for a few days last[14] week, but now feels[15] quite well again. 7. I had a most unwelcome visit a week ago today.[16] 8. I was sitting[17] with the children and showing[17] them picture-books. 9. All at once[18] I heard (some one) knock[19] at the door. 10. I opened (the door) myself and was astonished to see a policeman before me. 11. "Madam,"[20] he asked, "have you a servant[21] by name of[22] Minna Engel?" 12. "Yes, certainly," I answered, "but what have you to do with her?" 13. "The girl probably knows[23] well enough," said he; "I am going to take[24] her along (with me). 14. She is a thief[25] and goes out to[26] service only in order to[27] steal. 15. She probably has many things of yours[28] already in her[29] trunk. Just let

us look,[30] please." 16. We went to her[29] room, and there were about a dozen articles-of-clothing,[31] seven silver spoons, five forks, and a ring of your sister's.[32]

VOCABULARY.

A'benteuer, *n. s. 1, adventure.*
ängſtigen (ſich), *v.*, torment one's self, be anxious.
ant'worten, *v.*, **answer**; *pret.* antwortete.
bang(e), *adv.*, anxiously; bange machen, *with dat.*, to trouble, worry.
befinden (ſich), *v.*, **find** (one's self), 'do.'
darüber, *adv.*, about that, about it, [**thereover**].
Dienſt, *m. s. 2*, service.
Dutzend, *n. s. 2, dozen.*
ein'mal, *adv.*, once; einmal', just, pray.
erſtaunt', *ppl.*, astonished.
Gabel, *f. w.*, fork.
genau', *adj.*, accurate, exact.
häufig, *adj.*, frequent; *adv.*, often, [**heap-**].
Kleidung, *f. w.*, **clothing**, apparel.
klopfen, *v.*, knock; *pret.*, klopfte.
Koffer, *m. s. 1*, trunk, [*coffer*].
Löffel, *m. s. 1*, spoon, [to **lap**].
öffnen, *v.*, **open**; *pret.*, öffnete.
Poliziſt', *m. w.*, *policeman.*
ſcheinen, *v.*, seem, **shine.**
ſilbern, *adj.*, **silver.**
ſitzen, *v.*, **sit**; *pret.*, ſaß.
ſtehlen, *v.*, **steal.**
Stück, *n. s. 2*, piece.
un'bedeutend, *adj.*, insignificant.
Un'fall, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), accident.
un'willkommen, *adj.*, **unwelcome.**

NOTES.—[1] **Your**, Dein, the possessive corresponding to Du, the proper pronoun in this exercise, which may be thought of as part of a letter to the son abroad; cf. p. 94, n. 5. Note that it is based on the Reading Lesson, Ex. XXIV.—[2] **of last month**, see p. 94, n. 2.—[3] **came to hand**, see p. 94, n. 3.—[4] **I have been for . . . now**, ich bin nun ſeit . . .—[5] **greatly concerned**, in großer Unruhe.—[6] **I need not be anxious**, ich brauche mich nicht zu ängſtigen; cf. p. 94, n. 5.—[7] **perhaps**; position?—[8] **worries me greatly**, macht mir ſehr bange.—[9] **from your**, aus deinem.—[10] **serious**, ſchwer.—[11] **more exact details**, Genaueres; tell; 2. pers. sing. imperative is formed by adding e to the stem.—[12] **things are going**,

geht.—[13] **with us**, bei uns.—[14] **last**, vorig.—[15] **but now feels**, befindet sich aber jetzt.—[16] **a week ago to-day**, heute vor acht Tagen; cf. Ex. XXIII a, n. 22. [17] **was sitting . . . showing**, saß . . . zeigte.—[18] **all at once**, auf ein'mal. —[19] **knock**; inf. without zu may be used (here without subject) as object of hörte; cf. §§ 366. 2; 187.—[20] **Madam**, Ger. equiv. here is Gnädige Frau; gnädig = *gracious*.—[21] **servant**(-girl), Dienstmädchen.—[22] **by name of**, Namens.—[23] **knows**, weiß.—[24] See p. 62, n. 5.—[25] **thief**, Diebin. —[26] **out to**, in den.—[27] **in order to**, um zu.—[28] **of yours**, von Ihnen.—[29] **her**, ihrem.—[30] **just . . . look**, sehen wir einmal'.—[31] **articles-of-clothing**, Kleidungsstücke.—[32] Express simply with von.

EXERCISE XXIV c.

1. The purse does not belong to you; it belongs to me. 2. The children find themselves without a relative[1] in the world. 3. That is not your[2] affair; you have nothing to do with it. 4. They are no friends of mine[3]; I have nothing to do with them. 5. The girl does not live here; I do not know her at all. 6. The letter already has many bad mistakes; you are not writing[4] it carefully enough. 7. The coat does not fit me at all well; the tailor may[5] keep it. 8. There are four of us[6] and it is not yet late; let us go[7] through the woods. 9. His address was very tedious, especially the first part of it. 10. I certainly put[8] the purse in my pocket, but I do not find it now. 11. He has a great number of books,[9] but there are[10] few novels among them. 12. I see myself the great importance of this[11] step. 13. We are good friends, are we not? 14. I hope you mean me also, for we certainly know each other very well. 15. Mother is probably coming next Saturday[12]; the children are coming with her. 16. I am building myself[13] a new boat and expect much pleasure with[14] it this summer.[15]

VOCABULARY.

behalten, *v.*, keep, retain, [-hold].
Beutel, *m. s. 1*, purse.
darun'ter, *adv.*, under it *or* that, among them, [**thereunder**].

davon', *adv.*, of it *or* that, from it *or* that.
einan'der, *pron.* (*indecl.*), each other, **one another.**
passen, *v.* (*dat.*), fit.
Roman', *m. s. 2*, novel, *romance.*
Schritt, *m. s. 2*, step.
selbst, *pron.*, **self**, myself, yourself, etc.
Sonnabend, *m. s. 2*, Saturday, [**eve of Sun**-day].
sorgfältig, *adj.*, careful.
stecken, *v.*, put, **stick.**
Wichtigkeit, *f. w.*, importance, **weighti**-ness.

NOTES.—[1] **relative**; see Ex. XVIII f, n. 3.—[2] **your**, deine, if 'you' = du; Ihre, if 'you' = Sie.—[3] **of mine**, von mir.—[4] **you are . . . writing**, du schreibst.—[5] **may**, kann or mag.—[6] **there are four of us**, es sind unser vier.—[7] **let us go**, gehen wir; cf. p. 43, n. 4.—[8] **put**, steckte.—[9] **a great . . . books**; see p. 54, n. 1.—[10] **there are**, es sind.—[11] **this**; dies is decl. like a strong adj.—[12] **next Saturday**; acc. of time when, § 266. 2. —[13] **myself** is here a reflexive pron., not intensive as in sentence 12. —[14] **with**, here = von.—[15] **this summer**, acc. of time.

PERSONAL AND POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

EXERCISE XXV b.

[Cf. Reading Lesson, p. 97.]

1. I recently had[1] an agreeable proof of the honesty and cleverness of the Leipzig[2] police. 2. One morning[3] about eleven o'clock I was sitting at my table writing[4] letters. 3. All at once there was a knock,[5] and before my door stood[6] two policemen. 4. "What is your name, sir[7]?" asked one of them,[8] "and where were you last evening?" 5. I was naturally very much[9] astonished at[10] his second question, but told[11] him the place. 6. "How much money have you in your purse at[12] this moment?" asked the other. 7. "I think about seventy-five marks," said I, putting[13] my hand in my pocket for[14] my purse, but it was not there. 8. They looked me[15] shrewdly in the eye all the while[16] and evidently noted[17] my look of genuine[18] astonishment. 9. "This is your property, I presume," said one of them, handing[19] me a small purse. 10. "It

is mine, sure enough,[20]" I answered, "and I am most thankful to have it again." 11. "Please examine[21] the contents," said the policeman; "does it tally exactly? Is any[22] of the sum missing?" 12. I opened the purse and found[23] in it seventy-five marks in gold-pieces.[24] 13. "It does not belong to me after all,[25]" said I, probably with a look of disappointment; "these are all[26] gold-pieces, and I had in mine about fifteen marks in silver." 14. "We know[27] it is not yours," he answered, "but this one is,[28]" and thereupon he drew my own purse from his pocket. 15. "Your mistake was a perfectly natural one," said his companion, "for the other purse is very similar[29] to yours." 16. This was certainly a clever[30] test of my ownership[31] and my honesty, wasn't it?

VOCABULARY.

ähnlich, *adj.* (*dat.*), similar (to).
al'lerdings', *adv.*, to be sure.
besehen, *v.*, look at, examine, [be-see].
Beweis', *m. s. 2*, proof, [-wise].
Blick, *m. s. 2*, glance, look.
dankbar, *adj.*, thank-ful, grateful.
darauf, *adv.*, there-upon.
Ent'täu'schung, *f. w.*, disappointment.
Erstau'nen, *n. s.* (*no pl.*), astonishment.
fehlen, *v.*, *fail;* be lacking *or* missing.
Frage, *f. w.*, question.
Inhalt, *m. s. 2*, contents, [in-hold].
Irrtum, *m. s. 3*, error, mistake, [err-dom].
Kamerad', *m. w.*, *comrade*, companion.
Klugheit, *f.* (*no pl.*), prudence, shrewdness, cleverness.
Mark, *f. w.*, mark.
nett, *adj.*, *neat*, nice.
Polizei', *f. w.*, *police.*
Prüfung, *f. w.*, trial, test, *proving.*
Redlichkeit, *f. w.*, honesty.
reichen, *v.*, reach, hand.
Silber, *n. s.* (*no pl.*), silver.
stimmen, *v.*, tally, coincide.
Summe, *f. w.*, *sum.*
verschmitzt, *adv.*, shrewdly.
ziehen, *v.*, draw; *pret.* zog, [tow].

NOTES.—[1] **had**, hatte.—[2] **Leipzig**; see § 109. 2.—[3] **one morning**, eines Morgens; cf. § 251. 2, *a*.—[4] **writing**, und schrieb.—[5] **there was a knock**, klopfte es.—[6] **stood**, standen, pret. of stehen.—[7] **what is . . . sir**, wie heißen Sie, mein Herr?—[8] **of them**, derselben, § 134. 1.—[9] **very much**, sehr.—[10] **at**, über, with acc.—[11] **told**, sagte (or nannte, pret. of nennen, *to name*).—[12] **at**, in.—[13] **putting**, und steckte.—[14] **for**, nach.—[15] **me**, mir.—[16] **all the while**, die ganze Zeit.—[17] **noted**, merkten.—[18] **genuine**, wahr.—[19] **handing**, und reichte.—[20] **sure enough**, allerdings.—[21] **examine**, besehen Sie.—[22] **any**, etwas.—[23] **found**, fand.—[24] **gold-pieces**, Goldstücke.—[25] **not . . . after all**, doch nicht.—[26] **all**, lauter.—[27] **know**, wissen.—[28] **this one is**, dieser ist's (= ist es).—[29] **ähnlich** follows governed word.—[30] **clever**, nett.—[31] **ownership**, Eigentumsrecht.

EXERCISE XXV c.

REMARK.—Translate 'you' by du, Sie or ihr, as you please, but take care that pronoun and possessive be congruous; that is, do not, in the same sentence, associate dein with Sie, Ihr with du, or the like.

1. The city is famous for[1] its beautiful parks. 2. He is doing this for my sake, not for[2] his own advantage. 3. Your cottage is pretty, to be sure, but its location does not please me. 4. Our horse is much better than theirs. 5. Well, how goes it these days[3] with your son and his family? 6. You are a faithful friend; I am most grateful for your kindness to[4] me and mine. 7. Many an author's first work remains his best. 8. The little fellow is the picture of his father. 9. Children, love and honor[5] your parents. 10. I named my price, but it was too high for him. 11. He is certainly doing his part; why are you not doing yours? 12. Our neighbor's children are very pretty; one of them is really beautiful. 13. My guests seem to be old acquaintances[6] of yours. 14. One sees the like of him[7] very seldom nowadays. 15. Her help was most welcome; without it my whole labor[8] was in vain. 16. My dear child, why are you crying? Your mother will soon be[9] here, dry[10] your tears. 17. She came[11] softly into the room and laid[12] the little child in its bed. 18. The boys are taking a walk with their aunt and showing her the sights of the city.

VOCABULARY.

bekannt, *adj.*, known; *as subst.*, acquaintance.[6]
ehren, *v.*, honor.
Güte, *f. w.*, **good**-ness, kindness.
heutzutage, *adv.*, nowadays.
Hilfe, *f. w.*, **help**.
legen, *v*, **lay**.
leise, *adv.*, softly.
nennen, *v.*, **name**; *pret.* nannte.
Thräne, *f. w.*, tear.
trocknen, *v.*, dry.
vergebens, *adv.*, in vain.
Vorteil, *m. s. 2*, advantage.
weinen, *v.*, weep, cry.

NOTES.—[1] **for**, wegen.—[2] **for**, um . . . willen.—[3] **these days**, in diesen Tagen.—[4] **to**, gegen.—[5] **love, honor**; 2d pers. pl. imperative is formed by adding et to the stem.—[6] **acquaintances**; see Ex. XVIII f, n. 3, and § 290. 2 *a.*—[7] **the like of him**; see § 127. 2.—[8] **labor**, Arbeit.—[9] **will be**; use pres.—[10] **dry**; see Ex. XXIV b, n. 11.—[11] **came**, kam.—[12] **laid**, legte; case with in? cf. p. 98, n. 1.

EXERCISE XXVI b.

[Cf. Reading Lesson, p. 99.]

REMARK.—Write this exercise three times for the three cases that 'you' means (*a*) a near relative or an intimate friend; (*b*) two intimate friends, and (*c*) one or more acquaintances.

1. Who are you? 2. Are you sick? 3. Where are your books? 4. Have you your books with you? 5. You need true friends; be on your guard against[1] false ones. 6. We know you and therefore we believe in[2] you. 7. You are very fortunate; you have youth and health. 8. It is your duty to explain your conduct. 9. We tell you[3] candidly, your conduct does not please us. 10. Your false steps will certainly bring you[3] regret. 11. Your duty lies plain[4] before you; you need no explanation of it. 12. Be[5] honorable in every act; never be unfaithful to[6] your friends. 13. Your own industry is the best capital; depend[7] chiefly upon it. 14. Be ready[8] at[9] all times to hear the counsel of your parents and teachers. 15. They have always your true welfare at[10] heart; their hopes are only for your happiness.

VOCABULARY.

auf'richtig, *adj.*, sincere, frank, candid, [**up-right**].
Betragen, *n. s.* (*no pl.*), conduct, behavior.
darum', *adv.*, therefore.
erklären, *v.*, explain, make *clear*.
Erklärung, *f. w.*, explanation.
Fleiß, *m. s.* (*no pl.*), industry.
glauben, *v.*, be-**lieve**.
hüten (sich), *v.*, be on one's guard, [**heed**].
Jugend, *f.* (*no pl.*), **youth**.
Kapital', *n. s. 2* (*pl. also* -ien), *capital*, principal.
Rat, *m. s.* (*no pl.*), advice, counsel.
Reue, *f.* (*no pl.*), repentance, regret, [to **rue**].
treulos, *adj.*, faithless, [**true-**].
verlassen (sich), *v.*, rely, depend (upon = auf, *with acc.*).
Wohl, *n. s.* (*no pl.*), welfare, [**well**].

NOTES.—[1] **be on your guard**, hüte dich, hütet euch, hüten Sie sich; cf. Ex. XIX d, n. 5; if the sentence were contained in a letter, dich and euch would be written with initial capitals, see § 4. 2; **against**, vor with dat., see § 377, **vor**, *a*, (4).—[2] **in**, an with acc., see § 377, **an**, *b* (2).—[3] **you**, use dat.—[4] **plain**, offenbar.—[5] **be**, sei, seid, seien Sie; cf. Ex. XIX d, n. 5.—[6] **unfaithful to**; express by dat. without prep., the adjective following governed word; cf. § 260.—[7] **depend**, verlasse dich, verlaßt euch, verlassen Sie sich; cf. n. 1.—[8] **ready**, bereit.—[9] **at**, zu.—[10] **at**, am.

EXERCISE XXVII a.

[Cf. Colloquy, p. 100]

1. Well, Doctor, things are going[1] badly with us[2] again. 2. In fact,[3] not a single one of us is quite well. 3. My wife is suffering from[4] a severe[5] cold and every other day[6] she has a little fever. 4. Yes, of course, some fever is always to be expected[7] with[8] a cold. 5. The little boy[9] comes home every day with a headache. 6. Perhaps it is on account of the bad air in the school; the room for the little ones is certainly too small. 7. The plumbing in that old building is very poor[10] too; the condition of our school-buildings[11] is undoubtedly disgraceful. 8. Unfortunately[12] I can-

not come to your house[13] this morning, but I will surely be[14] there before evening. 9. I will send[14] some medicine now; perhaps that will help a little. 10. I am very sorry, but I must hurry[15] to the station. 11. You need not wait, I will send the medicine directly by[16] a messenger; oh, no, it is no trouble whatever.[17] 12. But tell me,[18] what is the matter with you? 13. Oh, my old friend, the rheumatism, is making me his regular visit. 14. Yes, I have been suffering with it[19] now for ten years; medicine seems to do no good.[20] 15. It is easy to talk of a different climate, to be sure, but what about[21] my business?

VOCABULARY.

Arznei', *f. w.*, medicine.
beeilen (sich), *v.*, hurry.
Bote, *m. w.*, messenger.
Erkältung, *f. w.*, -cold.
fehlen, *v.*, *fail;* was fehlt, *with dat.*, what is the matter with?
Fieber, *n. s. 1*, *fever.*
gesund', *adj.*, well, healthy, [-sound].
gleich, *adj.*, like, alike, [-like]; *as adv.*, directly.
helfen, *v.*, help; hilft, helps.
Klima, *n. s.* (*pl.* -ta *or* -te), *climate.*
können, *v.*, can, be able; ich kann, I can.
Kopfweh, *n. s. 2*, headache, [-woe].
leid, *adj.*, disagreeable; es thut mir leid, I am sorry, [loath].
leiden, *v.*, suffer, [loathe].
Mühe, *f. w.*, pains, trouble.
müssen, *v.*, must; ich muß, I must.
regelmäßig, *adj.*, regular.
Rheu'matis'mus, *m. s.* (*no pl.*), *rheumatism.*
schändlich, *adj.*, shameful, disgraceful.
schlimm, *adj.*, bad, [slim].
sicher, *adj.*, *secure*, sure, certain; *as adv.*, surely.
warten, *v.*, wait, [ward].
Was'serleit'ung, *f. w.*, water-supply, plumbing, [water-leading].
Zu'stand, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), condition.

NOTES.—[1] things are going, es geht.—[2] with us, bei uns zu Hause.—[3] in fact, eigentlich.—[4] from, an with dat.; cf. § 377, an, *a* (6).—[5] severe, stark.—[6] every other day, alle zwei Tage.—[7] to be expected; see § 367. 4.

—[8] **with**, bei.—[9] **the little boy**, der Kleine.—[10] **poor**, schlimm.—[11] **school-buildings**, Schulgebäude.—[12] **unfortunately**, see p. 102, n. 1.—[13] **to your house**, zu Ihnen.—[14] **will be**, see p. 62, n. 5.—[15] **must hurry**, muß mich . . . beeilen.—[16] **by**, durch.—[17] **no . . . whatever**, gar keine.—[18] **tell me**, sagen Sie mir; cf. Ex. XIX d, n. 5.—[19] **with it**, daran.—[20] **to do no good**, nichts zu helfen.—[21] **about**, von.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

EXERCISE XXVIII b.

[Cf. Colloquy, p. 105.]

1. Do you find this quiet life in the country[1] pleasant? 2. These are the most splendid forests in all[2] Germany. 3. This region is getting[3] famous; travellers are coming every week in great numbers. 4. On that account[4] I shall remain[5] here no longer. 5. Such crowds (of)[6] people are intolerable to[7] me. 6. Let us rest[8] a few moments under those great trees. 7. Are those the towers of the cathedral in the distance? 8. How plainly one sees[9] the old castle from here! 9. This poor man's sufferings make life bitter to[7] him. 10. Fortunately we very seldom have such hot days in this region. 11. We have at times the same weather for several weeks. 12. This everlasting reading[10] gets tiresome after so long (a) time. 13. My relations with the old gentleman were very friendly; with the son and his[11] wife most unpleasant. 14. Such a remarkable contrast between father and son is indeed rare. 15. It is chiefly his wife's fault[12]; as a[13] boy he was quite different. 16. It is really a pity; with that woman, happiness is utterly impossible for[14] him or his father.

VOCABULARY.

bisweilen, *adv.*, at times.
deutlich, *adj.*, plain, distinct; *as adv.*, plainly.
Dom, *m. s. 2*, cathedral, *dome*.
ewig, *adj.*, everlasting, eternal, [**aye-**].
Ferne, *f. w.*, distance, [**far-**].
Gegensatz, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), contrast.

merkwürdig, *adj.*, remarkable, [**mark-worthy**].
ruhen, *v.*, rest.
sauer, *adj.*, bitter, **sour.**
Schade, *m. mx.* (*pl.* Schäden), injury, loss; das ist schade, that is a pity; [**scathe**].
Schuld, *f. w.*, debt, guilt; er ist schuld daran (*dat.*), it is his fault; [**should**].
unerträg'lich, *adj.*, intolerable, unbearable.
unmög'lich, *adj.*, impossible.
Verhältnis, *n. s. 2*, relation.

NOTES.—[1] **in the country**; see p. 46, n. 5.—[2] **all**; see § 109. 3.—[3] **is getting**; see p. 48, n. 4.—[4] **on that account**, deswegen.—[5] **shall remain**; see p. 62, n. 5.—[6] **crowds of**; see § 246. 1, *a.*—[7] **to**; express by dat. of pers. pron. without prep.—[8] **let us rest**, ruhen wir; cf. p. 43, n. 4.—[9] **one sees**; see p. 41, n. 4.—[10] **reading**, Lesen, a verbal noun, or infinitive used as a noun; all such are neut. sing.; cf. § 365.—[11] **his**, i.e., the son's; see p. 107, n. 5.—[12] **It is . . . fault**, Seine Frau ist hauptsächlich daran schuld.—[13] **a** is omitted in the Ger. idiom; cf. § 231.—[14] **for**; express by dat. of persons concerned (without prep.), to follow verb.

EXERCISE XXVIII c.

1. As a[1] boy I learned many pithy sayings, and I know[2] many of them by heart even[3] to-day. 2. That lady's little son is very polite to[4] elderly people. 3. He got[5] us chairs and cushions; we thanked him and afterward told[6] his mother about it.[7] 4. I said, "The parents of *that* boy must[8] indeed be proud," and my words evidently gave[9] her great pleasure. 5. Where did you get[10] that fine umbrella? You surely did not buy[11] it? 6. No, it is a present from a former pupil; he sent[12] me a handsome cane besides. 7. I know this face; yes, it has the same eyes, the same nose, the same mouth. 8. The child is indeed his father's own[13] son. 9. At what time shall you take[14] your walk to-day? 10. I have only one hour free in the forenoon,[15] namely, from half past nine to half past ten. 11. Let us not speak[16] of this; the matter is most intolerable to me. 12. He is not always truthful; therefore I have nothing to do with him. 13. Take a seat,[17] please; wait a moment,[18] I will get[19] you a more comfortable chair. 14. Is this the best and shortest path to the vil-

lage? 15. A remarkable student does not become[20] on that account a good teacher. 16. Such comfortable beds as these one seldom finds in a boarding-house.

VOCABULARY.

auswendig, *adv.*, by heart.
danken, *v.* (*dat.*), **thank.**
dazu', *adv.*, besides, withal, [**thereto**].
Geschenk, *n. s. 2*, present.
Gesicht, *n. s. 3*, countenance, face, **-sight.**
höflich, *adj.*, polite.
holen, *v.*, fetch, get, [**hale**].
Kissen, *n. s. 1, cushion.*
kräftig, *adj.*, strong, pithy, [**craft-**].
Mund, *m. s. 2–3*, **mouth.**
nachher', *adv.*, afterward.
Nase, *f. w.*, **nose.**
Pension', *f. w.*, boarding-house.
Pfad, *m. s. 2*, **path.**
Regenschirm, *m. s. 2*, umbrella.
Spruch, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), saying.
Stock, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ö), stick, cane, [**stock**].
vor'mittags, *adv.*, in the forenoon.
wahrhaft, *adj.*, truthful; *as adv.*, truly, really.
woher', *adv.*, whence.

NOTES.—[1] **as a,** als; cf. Ex. XXVIII *b*, n. 13.—[2] **I know,** here ich kann. —[3] **even,** auch noch.—[4] **to,** gegen.—[5] **got,** holte.—[6] **told,** erzählten; if inverted order is used, wir should be repeated.—[7] **about it,** davon.—[8] **must,** müssen.—[9] **gave,** machten.—[10] **where did you get,** woher haben Sie.—[11] **surely did not buy,** kauften . . . ja nicht.—[12] **sent,** schickte.—[13] **own,** here wahr.—[14] **shall you take,** machen Sie; cf. p. 62, n. 5.—[15] **in the forenoon,** vormittags; cf. § 251. 2, *a*.—[16] **let us not speak,** sprechen wir nicht; cf. p. 43, n. 4.—[17] **take a seat,** nehmen Sie Platz.—[18] **a moment;** use acc. of duration of time; cf. § 266. 3.—[19] **will get;** see p. 106, n. 1.—[20] **does not become,** wird nicht; cf. p. 48, n. 4.

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

EXERCISE XXIX b.

[Cf. Reading Lesson, p. 110.]

1. I am very sorry that your[1] kind letter of the 12th of last month[2] has lain[3] so long unanswered. 2. What you tell me about my friends in the school is always most interesting to me.[4] 3. Here in this strange[5] land I think very

often of[6] my schoolmates[7] and of the happy years we had with[8] you. 4. The old proverb, "Out of sight, out of mind," is by no means true, so far as I am concerned.[9] 5. On the[10] contrary, I think that one values the old friends most[11] when[12] one is far away[13] from them. 6. It causes me real regret[14] that [the][15] young Fritz Moser gives[16] you so much trouble with his stupid tricks. 7. How he can be[17] so ungrateful to you,[18] is to me scarcely comprehensible. 8. He seems to be a thorough good-for-nothing, capable of everything (that is) bad,[19] and to have no character whatever.[20] 9. Even[21] as a child he was not honest, and so nothing better is to be expected.[22] 10. It is truly[23] a pity that you give yourself so much anxiety on his account.[24] 11. He is evidently not to be improved,[22] and all that you do for him is only lost pains. 12. Your kind advice in reference to[25] my studies is most welcome at this time, and I thank you heartily for it. 13. As you have known me from childhood,[26] you know[27] exactly what is best for me. 14. The errors of which you speak, I am trying my best[28] to avoid. 15. He is truly fortunate whose friends are ever ready to help with word and deed.[29]

VOCABULARY.

begreiflich, *adj.*, comprehensible, [-grip-].
betreffen, *v.*, concern; betrifft, concerns.
Bezug, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), reference, regard.
Charak'ter, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* -te're), *character*.
da, *sub. conj.*, as, since.
daß, *sub. conj.*, that.
dumm, *adj.*, stupid, [dumb].
entfernt', *adv.*, distant, far away.
fähig, *adj.*, capable (of = zu), fit, suited.
Gegenteil, *n. s. 2*, contrary.
kaum, *adv.*, scarcely, hardly.
keineswegs, *adv.*, by no means, in no way.
redlich, *adj.*, honest, candid.
schätzen, *v.*, value, esteem.
Sinn, *m. s. 2*, sense, mind.
Sorge, *f. w.*, care, anxiety, [sorrow].

Sprichwort, *n. s. 3*, proverb.
Streich, *m. s. 2*, prank, trick, **stroke.**
Tau'genichts, *m.* (*indecl.*), good-for-nothing.
unbeant'wortet, *pple.*, **unanswered.**
un'dankbar, *adj.*, **unthank-ful,** ungrateful.
verloren, *pple.*, lost, [**forlorn**].
vermeiden, *v.*, avoid.
versuchen, *v.*, try, [**-seek**].
vollkom'men, *adj.*, complete, perfect, thorough.

NOTES.—[1] **your**; Sie and the corresponding possessive should be used for all pronouns of 2d person in this exercise, which is based on the Reading Lesson, Ex. XXIX.—[2] **of last month**; see p. 94, n. 2.—[3] **has lain**, liegt; cf. p. 41, n. 1.—[4] **to me**, mir, immediately after verb.—[5] **strange** in the sense of *foreign* is fremd, not sonderbar or seltsam, which = *peculiar*.—[6] **of**, an with acc.; cf. § 377, an, *b*, (2).—[7] **schoolmate**, Schulkamerad.—[8] **with**, bei.—[9] **so far . . . concerned**; see § 141. 1.—[10] **on the**, im.—[11] **most**, am meisten, not meist; cf. 295. 3.—[12] **when**, wenn, not als; cf. § 381. 1, *a*, *k*; cf. also *b*, *i*, *l*.—[13] **far away**, weit entfernt.—[14] **it causes . . . regret**, es thut mir wirklich leid.—[15] [**the**]; see § 225, *a*.—[16] **gives**, macht.—[17] **can be**, sein kann, at end of clause.—[18] **to you**, Ihnen, to follow 'he'.—[19] **capable of . . . bad**, zu allem Schlechten fähig.—[20] **no . . . whatever**, gar keinen.—[21] **even**, schon.—[22] **is to be expected**; see § 367. 4.—[23] **truly**, wahrhaft.—[24] **on his account**, um seinetwillen.—[25] **to**, auf with acc.—[26] **from childhood**, von Kind auf, i.e. *from a child up*.—[27] **you know**, so wissen Sie; cf. p. 111, n. 2.—[28] **my best**, aufs beste, not am besten; cf. § 375. 2.—[29] **with word and deed**; the corresponding Ger. phrase is, mit Rat und That.

EXERCISE XXIX c.

1. Is that the lady who gives music-lessons?[1] 2. The houses of which you speak are very handsome, but the rent is too dear for us. 3. There are[2] people who think that they know everything. 4. That is the old gentleman who has such lovely daughters. 5. Students whose parents are poor sometimes receive help from the university. 6. The answer which he sends to[3] my request does not please me at all. 7. I am doing all that I can. 8. That is not the book I am looking for, although it has a similar title. 9. He who is without friends is indeed a wretched creature.[4] 10. There is[2] a proverb which runs: "All is not

gold that glitters." 11. Whoever visits Dresden sees[5] above all the picture-galleries. 12. This is the most interesting thing[6] the book contains. 13. The boy does not seem to be honest, (a thing) which causes[7] me great anxiety. 14. He is one of those unhappy people whom nothing pleases. 15. I do not know the gentlemen of whom you are talking.

VOCABULARY.

Antwort, *f. w.*, **answer.**
Bitte, *f. w.*, request, [**bid-**].
erhalten, *v.*, receive, [**-hold**].
glänzen, *v.*, glitter, glisten, [**glance**].
lauten, *v.*, purport, run, [**loud-**].
Miete, *f. w.*, hire, rent, [**meed**].
obgleich', *sub. conj.*, although.
senden, *v.*, **send.**

NOTES.—[1] **music-lessons,** Musikstunden; if the meaning is *piano-lessons,* Klavierstunden; *gives,* giebt.—[2] **there are, there is,** es giebt.—[3] **to,** auf with acc.—[4] **a wretched creature**; express by substantive adjective; cf. § 290.—[5] **sees,** sieht; cf. p. 41, n. 4, and § 184.—[6] **the most interesting thing**; transl. by superl. of adj. used as substantive; cf. § 141. 2. —[7] **causes,** macht.

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

EXERCISE XXX b.

[Cf. Colloquy, p. 113.]

1. Who sat beside you at the[1] theater last evening? 2. On[2] which side do you mean, the right or the left? 3. What a stupid question! I mean the pretty young lady on your right, of course.[3] 4. Oh, that was my sister's friend, Miss Braun, who is visiting at our house.[4] 5. Whose friend? Your sister's? You don't say so![5] 6. Well, my friend too, but that doesn't signify anything.[6] What nonsense you do[7] talk! 7. Furthermore, my sister had tickets for the afternoon-performance[8] and could not

go herself on account of illness. 8. Now you understand why I accompanied[9] Miss Braun and above all why my sister was not with us. 9. What do you think of the new comedy? Whom is it by, anyway?[10] 10. I find it pretty good, but nothing remarkable; the author's name is not known. 11. What old jokes it contains! What do they take us for,[11] backwoodsmen? 12. Whom do you consider[12] the better actress, Miss Kramer or Miss Neumann? 13. In what? In this play?[13] Miss Kramer is capital, but the expression of her face never pleases me on the stage. 14. Nor me either[14]; what a different expression she has in the photographs that one sees all over[15] the city! 15. I visited John[16] Hempel the other day; just guess[17] how many of her photographs he has in his room. 16. Two stand on his desk and at least half a dozen are hanging on[18] the wall; he says that they represent her in all the different[19] rôles that she plays. 17. What sort of fellow is John anyway? Is he one of those people who are in love with[20] every new face and carry it[21] for a time in their pockets or their hearts?[22] 18. Oh, no; with John it is merely for the sake of the beauty[23]; the person makes little difference. 19. He makes pen-drawings[24] for the monthlies, and so with him a pretty face is a matter of business.[25]

VOCABULARY.

Ausdruck, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), expression.
Au'tor, *m. mx.*, *author*.
bedeu'ten, *v.*, signify, mean.
beglei'ten, *v.*, accompany, [-lead]; *pret.*, **begleitete**.
bloß, *adj.*, mere; *as adv.*, merely, only.
Bühne, *f. w.*, stage.
dar'stellen, *v.*, represent.
halten, *v.*, **hold**, consider.
hangen, *v.*, **hang**; **hängt**, **hangs**.
Hin'terwäld'ler, *m. s. 1*, backwoodsman.
Lustspiel, *n. s. 2*, comedy.
Monatsschrift, *f. w.*, **monthly** (journal *or* magazine).
Photographie', *f. w.*, *photograph*.

raten, *v.*, guess.
Schrift, *f. w.*, writing [**shrift**, *script*].
Spaß, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), jest, joke.
tragen, *v.*, carry, wear [**drag**, **draw**].
ü'brigens, *adv.*, moreover, furthermore.
Un'sinn, *m. s.* (*no pl.*), nonsense.
verliebt (in *with acc.*), *ppl. adj.*, in **love** (with).
verstehen, *v.*, under-**stand**.
Zeichnung, *f. w.*, drawing.
Zeitlang, eine, *adv. phrase*, for a time.

NOTES.—[1] **at the**, im.—[2] **on**, an (with dat.) or zu.—[3] **of course**; should follow verb in Ger.—[4] **at our house**, bei uns; **is visiting**, here better Besuch macht.—[5] **You don't say so!** see p. 115, n. 2.—[6] **doesn't signify anything**; transl. *signifies nothing*.—[7] **do**; express the emphasis by doch.—[8] **afternoon-performance**, Nachmittagsvorstellung.—[9] **accompanied**, begleitete; for the pret. ending, see § 176. 1.—[10] **anyway**, eigentlich.—[11] **What do they take us for**, Wofür hält man uns.—[12] **consider**, halten für; cf. § 265. 3, *c*.—[13] **play**, Stück.—[14] **Nor me either**, Mir auch nicht.—[15] **all over**, überall in.—[16] **John**, Johann.—[17] **just guess**, raten Sie einmal'.—[18] **on**, an.—[19] **different** in the sense of *various* is verschieden, not ander, which is *other*.—[20] **with**, in with acc.—[21] **it**, dasselbe; cf. § 134. 1.—[22] **their pockets . . . hearts**; use def. art. and sing. of both nouns in Ger.; cf. § 240. 2.—[23] **for the . . . beauty**, um der Schönheit willen.—[24] **pen-drawings**, Federzeichnungen.—[25] **matter of business**, Geschäftssache.

EXERCISE XXX c.

1. Who lives here now? 2. Whose house is this? 3. Who are those ladies with the pretty children? 4. What smells so sweet in the garden? 5. Whom are you looking for? 6. What are you looking for? 7. For whom are you buying these books? 8. For what are you buying these books? 9. With what are you writing, a pen or a pencil? 10. With whom are you going, your father or your uncle?[1] 11. From whom do you get these presents? 12. In what room are you sleeping now? 13. What bell do I hear every evening[2] at half-past eight? 14. What sort of man is your friend? 15. Which rooms do you like best? Which are the cheapest? 16. What days of the week are you at home? 17. From what persons have you this information? 18. With whom are you

going to the concert to-morrow evening? 19. By what steamer are they coming? 20. Of what does his property consist? 21. Do you know[3] what kind of people live in the village? 22. What luck! Whose money is it, I wonder?[4] 23. On what account[5] does he wish to remain at home?

VOCABULARY.

bekommen, *v.*, get, receive, obtain.
Bericht, *m. s. 2*, report, information.
Glocke, *f. w.*, bell, [*clock*].
lieblich, *adj.*, **lovely, sweet** (-scented).
riechen, *v.*, smell, [**reek**].
schlafen, *v.*, **sleep.**

NOTES.—[1] **father . . . uncle**; note the apposition, cf. § 270.—[2] **every evening**; acc. of time when, § 266. 2.—[3] **know**, wissen.—[4] **I wonder**, wohl.—[5] **on what account**, weshalb or weswegen.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

*EXERCISE XXXI b.**

[Cf. Colloquy, p. 118.]

1. I am looking for a short, interesting history of Germany for young readers. 2. My son reads[1] German fluently, so it need not be particularly easy in regard to language. 3. Only it must be[2] a sort of story,[3] with much about[4] famous heroes and the people's life and customs, but little of political history. 4. Perhaps you have some so-called historical novels? 5. It is true that one does not learn much history from them,[5] but some have a good historical background. 6. Moreover, they awaken (an) interest in the mind of[6] many a boy to whom ordinary[7] history is dull, in the beginning at least.[8] 7. Here are several new[9] novels, are

* Note that in this exercise only one of the persons taking part in the supposed dialogue is speaking. If used as a colloquy, the bookseller's answers to his customer's questions can readily be supplied. Based in part on the Colloquy, Ex. XXXI.

they not? Can[10] you praise them in every respect? 8. Oh, yes, I know[11] that this is an assumed[12] name. Does any one know[13] who the author really is? 9. So they are very much[14] in the fashion? Well, a book is not good merely because everybody reads it. 10. Many people just now are very fond of[15] these tendency-novels.[16] 11. They say that this book has a moral purpose, but to my mind[17] its contents shows somewhat bad taste. 12. Have you anything in the way of[18] picture-books? Please show me some[19]; I must[20] buy some presents for the little ones. 13. All these books are probably somewhat dear; have you others over there a little cheaper? 14. Yes, of course, good picture-books are not to be had[21] for little, and poor ones are worse[22] than none. 15. Well, I will take[23] these two. How much will all cost? 16. You really have a fine store with (an) excellent stock; one seldom finds so easily and quickly everything that he[24] wants.

VOCABULARY.

Anſicht, *f. w.*, view, opinion, [-sight].
Art, *f. w.*, kind, sort.
drüben, *adv.*, over yonder, over there.
erwecken, *v.*, a-waken.
Erzählung, *f. w.*, story, narrative, -tale.
gerade, *adv.*, exactly, just.
Hinſicht, *f. w.*, respect.
Hin'tergrund, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), back-ground.
hiſto'riſch, *adj.*, *historical.*
koſten, *v.*, *cost.*
Leſer, *m. s. 1*, reader.
Mo'de, *f. w.*, fashion, *mode.*
Sitte, *f. w.*, habit, custom.
ſittlich, *adj.*, moral.
Tendenz', *f. w.*, *tendency.*
Verfaſſer, *m. s. 1*, author.
Vorrat, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), supply, stock.
Zweck, *m. s. 2*, purpose, object.

NOTES.—[1] **reads**, lieſt, from leſen, which changes its root-vowel in 2. and 3. pers. sing.; cf. § 182. 2.—[2] **must be**, muß . . . ſein.—[3] **a sort of story**; see § 246. 1, *a.*—[4] **about**, über with acc.—[5] **from them**, daraus.—[6] **in the mind** of may be expressed simply by means of the prep. bei.—[7] **ordinary**, die gewöhnliche; *ordinary* in the sense of *common* = gemein.—[8] **at *least***, *wenigſtens*, to precede am Anfang.—[9] **new**, neuen or neue; cf. § 106.

2, *a.*—[10] can, können.—[11] I know, ich weiß.—[12] assumed, falsch.—[13] Does any one know? Weiß irgend jemand?—[14] much; omit in transl.—[15] are very fond of, haben . . . sehr gern.—[16] tendency-novel, Tendenzroman.—[17] to my mind, nach meiner Ansicht or meiner Ansicht nach.—[18] in the way of, in with dat.—[19] some, welche.—[20] I must, ich muß.—[21] to be had, zu haben; cf. § 367. 4.—[22] worse, schlimmer; poor here = schlecht.—[23] will take; see p. 62, n. 5.—[24] he, man, *not* er.

EXERCISE XXXI c.

1. Every one finds the book dull. 2. One of the two brothers is a teacher, the other is a stenographer. 3. It is said[1] that everything he does is lost pains. 4. For[2] breakfast I eat some fruit and bread and drink a cup of[3] coffee. 5. Please give[4] me some water; there is[5] none in my glass. 6. Please give me some pieces of bread with butter and meat; I wish nothing more. 7. If you wish anything in the way of[6] books to-day,[7] I have[8] some good ones. 8. If some one only comes, we shall finish the work quickly. 9. Many a rich man was the son of poor parents. 10. People[9] usually take one as[10] they find him. 11. We are looking for some good dance-music[11]; do you know of any? 12. On[12] his acts hangs[13] the happiness of many. 13. No one knows what the future contains. 14. His friendship brings me much advantage but little pleasure. 15. Everybody's business[14] is nobody's business. 16. Several relatives[15] are visiting us during the holidays.

VOCABULARY.

Brot, *n. s. 2*, **bread.**
Butter, *f.* (*no pl.*), *butter.*
essen, *v.*, **eat.**
Fleisch, *n. s.* (*no pl.*), meat, **flesh.**
Obst, *n. s.* (*no pl.*), fruit.
Stenograph', *m. w.*, *stenographer.*
Tanz, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), *dance.*
Tasse, *f. w.*, cup.
trinken, *v.*, **drink.**
wenn, *sub. conj.*, if, **when.**
Zukunft, *f.* (*no pl.*), future.

NOTES.—[1] it is said, man sagt.—[2] for, zum.—[3] a cup of; see § 246. 1, *a.*—[4] give, geben Sie; cf. Ex. XIX d, n. 5.—[5] there is, es ist; es giebt

would not be correct here; cf. § 340. 1.—[6] **in the way of**, in with dat.—[7] **to-day** in Ger. follows 'you'.—[8] **I have**, so habe ich; cf. p. 111, n. 2. —[9] **people** may be expressed by die Leute or by man; the latter will require sing. verb, nimmt; man must then be repeated as subject of 'finds', for it cannot be referred to with er.—[10] **as**, wie, not als; cf. § 381. 1, *l*.—[11] **dance-music**, Tanzmusik.—[12] **on**, an with dat.—[13] **hangs**, hängt; see § 182, 1.—[14] **business**, here Sache, i. e., *affair*.—[15] **relatives**; see Ex. XVIII f, n. 3, and § 290. 2.

AUXILIARY VERBS.

FORMS OF haben, sein AND werden.

EXERCISE XXXII b.

[Cf. Reading Lesson, p. 128.]

1. My dear Son![1] Your father and I are getting very impatient, for it will be[2] three weeks to-morrow since we have had a word[3] from you. 2. We know, of course, that you have been much[4] occupied with your studies, but you would certainly have had[5] time to write[6] us a few lines. 3. We try, to be sure, to have patience, but we cannot rid ourselves of the fear[7] that you perhaps are sick again. 4. We should undoubtedly be[8] easier if you had not had[9] such a severe illness a short time ago. 5. At the beginning of the winter you were altogether[10] too industrious and in consequence[11] became utterly worn-out. 6. Let your health be[12] henceforth of first importance.[13] 7. We are all well at home except your grandmother, whose condition has become notably worse[14] in the last weeks. 8. She gets tired very easily now and is seldom at[15] table with us. 9. Your sister has been at[16] the Exposition for[17] two weeks; she had an invitation to go with your uncle Charles[18] and his family. 10. You have probably had a letter from her during that time, or perhaps only souvenir-cards,[19] for she has little opportunity for writing.[20] 11. Your father and I were also inclined to go at first,[21] but cannot, on account of your grandmother's poor health.

12. We visited[22] the Exposition in Philadelphia seventeen years ago; we took[23] you children along, but you were too young to understand[6] much of it. 13. Respecting[24] the addition to[25] your pocket-money,[26] I wrote[27] in my last letter. 14. I told your father that you would like[28] to have a little more, on account of the great fair. 15. He says you need not limit[29] yourself, for you are not one[30] who wastes money. 16. I am daily expecting a long letter from you and hope it contains good news for Your loving Mother.[31]

VOCABULARY.

Ausstellung, *f. w.*, exposition.
bedeutend, *ppl. adj.*, significant; *as adv.*, notably.
beschäftigt, *ppl.*, busied, occupied.
Ein'ladung, *f. w.*, invitation.
ein'schränken, *v.*, limit.
erschöpft, *ppl. adj.*, exhausted, worn-out.
Folge, *f. w.*, consequence, result.
fortan', *adv.*, henceforth, hereafter, [forth-].
Geduld, *f. w.*, patience.
gefaßt, *ppl. adj.*, composed, calm.
Gelegenheit, *f. w.*, opportunity.
geneigt, *ppl. adj.*, inclined.
Groß'mutter, *f. s. 1* (*pl.* ü), grand-mother.
Karte, *f. w.*, *card.*
los, *adj.*, rid of, free from, loose.
Messe, *f. w.*, fair, *mass.*
müde, *adj.*, tired.
ungeduldig, *adj.*, impatient.
unzwei'felhaft, *adj.*, undoubted, unquestionable; *as adv.*, undoubtedly.
vergeuden, *v.*, waste.
Zuschuß, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), addition, increase.
zwar, *adv.*, to be sure, forsooth.

NOTES.—[1] This exercise may be thought of as following an answer to the letter of the Reading Lesson, Ex. XXXII, on which it is in part based.—[2] **it will be**, es werden . . . sein.—[3] **since we . . . a word**, daß wir kein Wort . . . gehabt haben.—[4] **much**, sehr.—[5] **you would . . . have had**; express either by means of the perf. cond. or its equivalent, the plup. subj.; cf. § 172. 2. The conclusion is here dependent on a suppressed condition, as, if *nothing else had* pre-

vented you —[6] **to write**; note that a dep. inf. comes at the end of the sentence; cf. § 187.—[7] **we cannot rid ourselves of the fear,** wir können die Besorgnis nicht los werden; cf. p. 129, n. 6.—[8] **we should be**; express either by means of pres. cond. or its equivalent, the pret. subj.; cf. § 172. 2.—[9] **if you had not had**; see p. 129, n. 5. For the whole subject of Conditional Sentences, see § 359.—[10] **altogether,** ganz und gar or durchaus.—[11] **in consequence,** in Folge dessen; with '**became**' the subject must be repeated, cf. § 418. 5.—[12] **Let your health be,** Deine Gesundheit sei, or Es sei Deine G.; cf. § 303. 3.—[13] **of first importance** may be idiomatically expressed by die Hauptsache, i. e., *the chief matter*.—[14] **worse,** schlimmer.—[15] **at,** zu.—[16] **at,** auf with dat.—[17] **for,** seit.—[18] **Charles,** Karl.—[19] **souvenir-card,** Ansichtskarte, i. e., *a card* on which is printed a *view*. Such postal cards, lately introduced here, are very common in Germany.—[20] **for writing,** zum Schreiben, the inf. being used as a neut. subst.; cf. § 365 and 2.—[21] **at first** should follow the verb in Ger.—[22] **visited,** besuchten.—[23] **took,** nahmen, pret. pl. of nehmen.—[24] **respecting,** was . . . betrifft with '**addition**' as object.—[25] **to,** an with dat.; cf. § 377, *an, a,* (4).—[26] **pocket-money,** Taschengeld; the *-n* is old gen. sing. ending; cf. § 400. 2, *b*.—[27] **wrote,** schrieb, pret. of schreiben.—[28] **that you would like,** daß es Dir lieb wäre.—[29] **limit,** einzuschränken; cf. p. 130, n. 12.—[30] **one**; see § 116. 1.—[31] **Your loving Mother,** Deine Dich liebende Mutter; the pres. part. is formed by adding *-end* to the stem (which is found by dropping the ending *-en* or *-n* of the inf., but cf. Ex. XXXIII c, n. 7) and is subject to all the rules of adjective declension.

EXERCISE XXXII c.

1. The weather has been very hot. 2. He has always been a dangerous enemy. 3. If you are not saving, you will one day be[1] poor. 4. Children, you have been lazy; why are you not more industrious? 5. Were he[2] a true friend, he would be[3] here now. 6. He had had a large fortune, but finally became[4] very poor. 7. In the future we shall be more careful. 8. It would be quite easy if I had a little help. 9. We have had many good friends in this city. 10. The man had evidently been dead several hours. 11. The matter has suddenly become very important. 12. They have had an excellent opportunity. 13. Let him only be quiet and he will soon have what he wants. 14. If he had been[5] honest, he would have had[6] many friends. 15. The journey would not have been necessary, had my

health been better. 16. Were you at home last evening? Shall you be home to-night? 17. These houses have been very expensive; they are getting cheaper now. 18. How much money did he have with[7] him? Had you none at all? 19. He will always be welcome at our house; I have never had a better friend.

VOCABULARY.

einst, *adv.*, **once**, one day, some time.
endlich, *adv.*, finally, at last, [**end**-].
faul, *adj.*, lazy, [**foul**].
Feind, *m. s. 2*, enemy, [**fiend**].
gefährlich, *adj.*, dangerous.
nötig, *adj.*, necessary, **need**-ful.
plötzlich, *adj.*, sudden; *as adv.*, suddenly.
sparsam, *adj.*, saving, economical, **spar**-ing.
verlangen, *v.*, demand, want, [**-long**].

NOTES.—[1] **you will be**; to introduce conclusion, so may be used; cf. p. 111, n. 2.—[2] **were he**; cf. p. 129, n. 5.—[3] **would be**; cf. Ex. XXXII b, n. 8.—[4] **but . . . became**, wurde aber endlich.—[5] **If he had been**; see p. 129, n. 5. For the whole subject of Conditional Sentences, cf. § 359.—[6] **would have had**; express either by means of the perf. cond. or its equivalent, the plup. subj.; cf. § 172. 2.—[7] **with**, bei; **him** is not to be transl. by ihm.

WEAK VERBS.

*EXERCISE XXXIII b.**

[Cf. Colloquy, p. 134.]

1. Father, I need a new book and I have not money enough to buy it. 2. Yes, I know you gave[1] me some day before yesterday, but I have only a quarter left of it.[2]

* In this exercise, which is based in part on the colloquy of Ex. XXXIII, only the son's part in the supposed dialogue is given. If the exercise be used for conversational purposes, it will be good practice for the student to supply suitable questions and answers for the father.

3. I know very well there is no danger of making a beggar of you[8]; you don't really think that I waste my money, do you?[4] 4. Yesterday I bought a new gymnasium-suit[5] that cost three dollars, so[6] you see I have been saving my pocket-money for several weeks. 5. I want a book of German poems; our teacher thinks it would be a good time now[7] to begin this reading. 6. No, we have not finished the reader yet, but it contains only prose. 7. The teacher wishes us to learn[8] some of the shorter poems by heart; we shall then recite them every other day.[9] 8. You approve this plan, don't you? Fortunately I am very fond of speaking pieces[10] and have had practice in my own language.[11] 9. We are through with the exercises in the grammar, and now we shall write easy compositions. 10. We must tell in prose[12] the contents of the poems which we learn; that is,[13] make a little story of it.[14] 11. That will be harder, of course, than mere translation,[15] but it will be more interesting at any rate. 12. And besides, we[16] shall be learning the language from[17] the language itself. 13. Well, I hope you will give me the money, for I wish to make[18] the purchase this afternoon. 14. Yes, I know you have always followed my German studies[19] with great interest, and I am trying to learn the language thoroughly. 15. A dollar will be more than enough[20]; the book costs only sixty cents. 16. What are you giving me two dollars for? Keep[21] the rest for a pair of skates?[22] Oh, that is splendid!

Vocabulary.

Remark.—The weak verbs, not counting compounds (except when a verb has occurred only in such form), which have been introduced in the preceding exercises are as follows: ängſtigen, antworten, arbeiten, bauen, bedeuten, beeilen, begleiten, bezahlen, bilden, brauchen, danken, darſtellen, dauern, ehren, einſchränken, erklären, erwecken, fehlen, feiern, fragen, fürchten, glänzen, glauben, handeln, holen, hören, hüten, kaufen, klopfen, koſten, lauten, leben, legen, lernen, lieben, loben, machen, meinen, merken, öffnen, paſſen, reden, reichen, richten, ruhen, ſagen, ſchätzen, ſchaukeln, ſchicken, ſetzen, ſpielen, ſtecken, ſtimmen, ſtu-

dieren, suchen, verbessern, vergeuden, verlangen, vollenden, warten, weinen, wohnen, wünschen, zeigen. For the irregular weak verbs bringen, denken, kennen, nennen, senden, see § 330.

Anzug, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), suit of clothes.
Aufgabe, *f. w.*, exercise.
Aufsatz, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), essay, composition.
Bettler, *m. s. 1*, beggar.
billigen, *v. w.*, approve.
Cent, *m. s.* (*pl.* -s), *cent.*
deklamie'ren, *v. w.*, *declaim*, recite.
Dollar, *m. s.* (*pl.* -s), dollar, [Thaler].
fertig, *adj.*, ready; fertig mit, through with.
folgen, *v. w.* (*aux.* sein), **follow.**
Gefahr, *f. w.*, danger, risk, [-**fear**].
genügen, *v. w.*, be **enough**, suffice.
glücklicherweise, *adv.*, fortunately, [**lucky-wise**].
Kauf, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* äu), purchase, [**chap, cheap**].
Lektü're, *f. w.*, text for reading, [*lecture*].
Lesebuch, *n. s. 3*, reading-**book**, reader.
ob, *sub. conj.*, whether; als ob, **as if.**
Plan, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), *plan.*
Prosa, *f.* (*no pl.*), *prose.*
schenken, *v. w.*, present, give.
Schlittschuh, *m. s. 2*, skate, [**slide-shoe**].
sparen, *v. w.*, save, **spare.**
stets, *adv.*, always, [**stead-ily**].
übersetz'en, *v. w.*, translate, [**over-set**].
übrig, *adj.*, remaining, [**over-**]; das übrige, the rest.
vorgestern, *adv.*, day be-**fore yester-day.**

NOTES.—[1] **gave**; use the perf., which often occurs in Ger. where Eng. prefers a pret.; cf. § 351. 1.—[2] **a quarter left of it**, einen Viertel-Dollar davon übrig.—[3] **of making . . . of you**, daß ich dich zum Bettler mache (subj.); see § 265. 2, *a.*—[4] **you don't really think, do you**, du glaubst (meinst) doch wirklich nicht.—[5] **gymnasium-suit**, Turnanzug.—[6] **so**, also, following verb, as often.—[7] **it would be a good time now**, es wäre jetzt an der Zeit.—[8] **us to learn**; transl. 'wishes that we . . . learn' (subj.); cf. § 367. 3, *a.*—[9] **every other day**, alle zwei Tage.—[10] **I am fond of speaking pieces**, ich habe das Deklamieren gern; cf. § 365.—[11] **my own language**, die Muttersprache.—[12] **in prose** should immediately precede principal verb, which comes at end of sentence.—[13] **that is**, das heißt (d. h. = i. e.); the inf. comes at the end, without zu, cf. § 366. 5.—[14] cf. ii.

daraus.—[15] **translation,** Übersetzen; the inf. used as noun is neuter and may be modified by adjectives, cf. § 365. Note that this word is used of *the act of translating,* whereas Übersetzung is the product of the act.—[16] **we**; position?—[17] **from,** aus.—[18] **to make**; position? cf. § 187.—[19] **my . . . studies**; use dat. with folgen; the phrase should immediately follow the aux.—[20] **will be more than enough,** wird mehr als genügen.—[21] **keep,** behalten, at the end; the form may be taken as elliptical, ich kann, ich darf being understood.—[22] **a pair of skates**; cf. §§ 246. 1, *a,* and 319. 1.

EXERCISE XXXIII c.

1. We had heard his story twice; at first we did not believe it. 2. We have visited his house and find that he told[1] the truth. 3. We knocked at[2] the door and waited some time before it was opened.[3] 4. The man fetched us chairs and we seated ourselves. 5. Finally he led us into the bedroom and without saying a word[4] pointed[5] to the bed. 6. We asked him how long his child had been[6] sick and whether he had had[6] a physician. 7. I handed him some money and said I would send a physician at once. 8. He seized my hand and thanked me with trembling[7] voice. 9. I have lived[8] all my life in the country. 10. Tell me what you think. Shall I learn the language quickly? 11. We have known him (a) long time and we shall try to help him. 12. Shall you follow my advice and rest a few days? 13. He talked of[9] music and showed intimate[10] acquaintance with the works of the great composers. 14. This idleness has lasted long enough; let him try to learn something. 15. They expected[11] their father yesterday, but the storm hindered[11] him. 16. People[12] have always esteemed him on account of his strict honesty. 17. If it does not cost too much, we shall travel in Europe next year. 18. He had studied four years at[13] the university and nearly finished his work when he became seriously[14] ill. 19. I am glad that this fine weather has lasted so long.

VOCABULARY.

deuten (auf, *acc.*), *v. w.*, point (to).
ehe, *sub. conj.*, before.
fassen, *v. w.*, grasp, seize.
Faulheit, *f.* (*no pl.*), laziness, idleness, [**foul-**].
freuen, *v. w.*, rejoice; es freut mich, I am glad.
führen, *v. w.*, lead, conduct.
hindern, *v. w.*, **hinder**, prevent.
reisen, *v. w.*, travel, [**rise**].
streng, *adj.*, strict, severe, [**strong**].
zittern, *v. w.*, tremble.

NOTES.—[1] **told**, sprach, pret. of sprechen.—[2] **at**, an with acc.—[3] **it was opened**; use active construction with man as subject.—[4] **without saying a word**, ohne ein Wort zu sagen; cf. § 367. 6.—[5] **pointed**; the subject must be repeated after the verb if the phrase 'without . . . word' precedes; cf. § 418. 5.—[6] **had been, had had**; use perf. subj., which corresponds to perf. ind. (also pret.) in direct form; cf. §§ 360. 4, 361. 2.—[7] **trembling**, zitternd (with prop. adj. inflex.); note that verbs in -eln and -ern form the pres. participle by adding nd, not end, to the stem.—[8] **lived**, gewohnt.—[9] **of**, von; use def. art.—[10] **intimate**, nähere.—[11] **expected, hindered**; use perf., cf. Ex. XXXIII *b*, n. 1.—[12] **people, man.**—[13] **at**; see p. 57, n. 5.—[14] **seriously**, schwer.

STRONG VERBS.

EXERCISE XXXIV b.

[Cf. Reading Lesson, p. 142.]

1. Dear Mother! Your second[1] letter has just come to hand[2] and I answer with all possible[3] haste. 2. I am very sorry that you have had so much anxiety[4] on account of my seemingly long silence.[5] 3. My letter of the eighth of last month you evidently did not receive[6]; it must have been lost,[7] which[8] is, however, very strange. 4. As you have guessed,[9] I was extremely busy at that time, but it is scarcely possible that I wrote a wrong[10] address. 5. At last my examinations are finished[11] and I can breathe freely again. 6. I am now in the best (of) health and run no risk[12] of getting sick again.[13] 7. Hard work was certainly

not responsible for[14] my illness, but rather the Leipzig climate, to which[15] I am now quite accustomed. 8. I received[6] a very kind letter lately from my old teacher, Mr. Müller; the news about my school-friends[16] was very interesting, although you had previously written me in part[17] about the same things. 9. It grieves me to hear that grandmother's health is so much worse; consumption[18] is indeed a fearful disease. 10. I am glad that Bertha has had (an) opportunity to visit the Exposition, although she remained only a short time. 11. I am curious to hear about her trip and hope she will send me a full description of it. 12. It was very good[19] of you to ask[20] father for an increase of[21] my pocket-money on account of the fair. 13. I succeeded in buying[22] the books and other things that I wanted for[23] a small sum. 14. Father was so liberal that I had enough left for a little trip in the Harz Mountains[24] with an English acquaintance.[25] 15. We had just been reading Heine's *Harzreise* together and were naturally curious to see the places[26] of which he writes. 16. We hit upon the plan[27] of making a trip on foot[28] through this famous region, and it[29] richly repaid[6] our curiosity.

NOTE.—The strong verbs, not counting compounds (except when a verb has occurred only in such form), which have been introduced in the preceding exercises are as follows (for their vowel-changes see, if in doubt, § 331):

†beginnen	begann	begonnen	halten	hielt	gehalten
†betreffen	betraf	betroffen	hangen	hing	gehangen
bitten	bat	gebeten	heißen	hieß	geheißen
*bleiben	blieb	geblieben	helfen	half	geholfen
essen	aß	gegessen	*kommen	kam	gekommen
finden	fand	gefunden	leiden	litt	gelitten
geben	gab	gegeben	lesen	las	gelesen
†gefallen	gefiel	gefallen	liegen	lag	gelegen
*gehen	ging	gegangen	nehmen	nahm	genommen
†gewinnen	gewann	gewonnen	raten	riet	geraten

* *Aux.* sein. † Verbs having inseparable prefixes omit ge- in the perf. pple.; *cf.* Ex. XXXVII b, n. 7, and §§ 208, 209.

riechen	roch	gerochen	stehen	stand	gestanden
scheinen	schien	geschienen	stehlen	stahl	gestohlen
schlafen	schlief	geschlafen	thun	that	gethan
schreiben	schrieb	geschrieben	tragen	trug	getragen
sehen	sah	gesehen	trinken	trank	getrunken
*sein	war	gewesen	†verlassen	verließ	verlassen
singen	sang	gesungen	†vermeiden	vermied	vermieden
sitzen	saß	gesessen	*werden	ward / wurde	geworden
sprechen	sprach	gesprochen	ziehen	zog	gezogen

VOCABULARY.

atmen, *v. w.*, breathe.
belohnen, *v. w.*, repay, reward.
Eile, *f.* (*no pl.*), haste.
freigebig, *adj.*, generous, liberal, [**free-giv**-ing].
gelingen, *v. s.*, (gelang, gelungen, *aux.* sein), succeed, be successful; es gelingt mir, I succeed.
gewohnt, *ppl. adj.*, accustomed.
kürzlich, *adv.*, lately.
laufen, *v. s.* (lief, gelaufen, *aux.* sein), run, [**leap**].
Neugierde, *f.* (*no pl.*), curiosity.
neugierig, *adj.*, curious.
obwohl', *sub. conj.*, although.
reichlich, *adj.*, plentiful, abundant; *as adv.*, **richly**.
scheinbar, *adj.*, seeming, apparent; *as adv.*, seemingly.
schließen, *v. s.* (schloß, geschlossen), close, conclude, infer.
schmerzen, *v. w.*, pain, grieve, [**smart**].
schweigen, *v. s.* (schwieg, geschwiegen), be silent.
Schwindsucht, *f.* (*no pl.*), consumption.
soeben, *adv.*, just now, just, [**so-even**].
treffen, *v. s.* (traf, getroffen), hit, hit upon, meet.
Verabredung, *f. w.*, agreement, arrangement.
vorher', *adv.*, before, previously.
zusammen, *adv.*, together.

NOTES.—[1] **Your second . . .**; this exercise may be thought of as an answer to the letter of Ex. XXXII b. It is based in part on the Reading Lesson, Ex. XXXIV.—[2] **come to hand**; see p. 94, n. 3.—[3] **with all possible**, mit möglichster.—[4] **anxiety**, Besorgnis.—[5] **silence**; inf.

as noun, cf. Ex. XXXIII b, n. 15.—[6] Use perf.—[7] it must have been lost, er ist wohl verloren gegangen; verloren gehen = *go astray, get lost.*—[8] which; cf. § 141, *a.*—[9] guess (=*infer*), schließen.—[10] wrong, falsch.—[11] finished (= *over*), vorüber.—[12] run no risk; cf. p. 144, n. 5.—[13] of getting sick again; tr. *again sick to become.*—[14] responsible for, schuld an (dat.); but, sondern, cf. § 379. 1.—[15] to which, woran.—[16] school-friends, Schulfreunde.—[17] in part, zum Teil.—[18] Use generic art.—[19] good may be expressed here by liebenswürdig.—[20] ask for, bitten um; fragen is used of *questioning*, bitten of *requesting; ask for* in the sense of *inquire for, after*, = fragen nach.—[21] of, an with dat.—[22] in buying, zu kaufen, at end of sentence; cf. § 187.—[23] for, um.—[24] Harz Mts., Harzgebirge.—[25] acquaintance is expressed by the *adj.* bekannt, used as *subst.*; cf. Ex. XVIII e, n. 3.—[26] place, Ort.—[27] plan, Verabredung.—[28] trip on foot, Fußwanderung.—[29] it, dieselbe.

EXERCISE XXXIV c.

1. She was sitting[1] by the window and reading[1] when I came home. 2. I remained standing for a time before I spoke. 3. She appeared not to see me, so finally I broke the silence, but she gave me no answer. 4. Is he gone[2] already? How long did he remain? 5. As he was going through the park, a man sprang out of the bushes and seized him by[3] the throat. 6. We found the boy under the tree; he was lying where he had fallen. 7. When we carried him into the house, we saw that blood was flowing from[4] his nose and mouth. 8. If we had remained[5] a little longer, we should have seen[5] him. 9. My teacher advised me[6] especially to attend[7] the theater; I should go[5] very often if it did not take[5] so much time. 10. He was standing by the door and we asked[8] him to come with us. 11. My cousin finds English pretty difficult; he reads and writes very well, but speaks only a little.[9] 12. Fruit[10] grows quickly and abundantly in the south. 13. His friends have done everything possible[11] for him; they have helped him not only with advice but[12] also with money. 14. He has not kept[13] his word and now they will do nothing further.[11] 15. If he had come to me, I should gladly have helped him, because I thought[14] so much of

his father. 16. If we had made this arrangement, everything would perhaps have gone well. 17. Were he a real friend, he would take more interest in [15] my plans.

VOCABULARY.

bißchen, ein, a little, [**bit, bite**].
Blut, *n. s.* (*no pl.*), **blood.**
brechen, *v. s.* (brach, gebrochen), **break.**
fallen, *v. s.* (fiel, gefallen, *aux.* sein), **fall.**
fließen, *v. s.* (floß, geflossen, *aux.* sein), flow, [**to fleet**].
Gebüsch, *n. s. 2*, **bush**-es, thicket.
greifen, *v. s.* (griff, gegriffen), grasp, seize, **grip(e).**
Hals, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), neck, throat, [**halse**].
sondern, *conj.*, but.[12]
springen, *v. s.* (sprang, gesprungen, *aux.* sein), **spring**, jump.
Süden, *m. s.* (*no pl.*), **south.**
wachsen, *v. s.* (wuchs, gewachsen, *aux.* sein), grow, [**wax**].

NOTES.—[1] **was sitting, reading**; it is one of the functions of the pret. in Ger. to express the 'progressive' or 'durative' in past time; cf. § 350. 1.—[2] **gone** may be expressed here by the adv. fort.—[3] **by,** an with acc.—[4] **from,** aus; express the poss. here by ihm before the prep.; cf. § 259, *a.*—[5] Note the condition contrary to fact; cf. § 359. 1. —[6] **me**; use dat., cf. § 258.—[7] **attend,** = *visit.*—[8] **asked**; see Ex. XXXIV b, n. 20.—[9] **a little,** wenig.—[10] **fruit,** das Obst.—[11] **everything possible,** alles Mögliche; the adj. is infl. weak because alles is a declined word, whereas in nichts Weiteres, **nothing further,** the rule in § 104. 2 applies.—[12] **but,** here sondern; cf. § 379. 1.—[13] **kept,** gehalten; cf. behalten, = *retain.*—[14] **thought . . . of**; *to think much of, esteem highly,* viel halten von —[15] **in,** an with dat.

EXERCISE XXXV b.[1]

[Cf. Reading Lesson, p. 145.]

1. From Leipzig we travelled by rail[2] to Halle, a famous university-town[3] on the Saale.[4] 2. Here we remained a day and a night, and visited some friends who were formerly students at the University (of) Leipzig. 3. From Halle we took[5] the train again by way of[6] Quedlinburg as far as[7] Halberstadt, where our tramp[8] proper[9] began. 4. On the first day we walked[10] as far as Wernigerode, a

little city at the foot[11] of the Harz Mountains, fifteen or sixteen miles distant[12] from Halberstadt. 5. Here we stayed overnight[13] and the next morning started for[14] Ilsenburg, a village about twelve miles westward from Wernigerode. 6. We reached Ilsenburg shortly[15] before noon; it was, of course, somewhat too late to climb[16] the Brocken,[17] the summit of which[18] is about four hours' walk[19] from there. 7. At the inn where we had taken our dinner[20] we obtained a good room with very comfortable[21] beds, something[22] one usually finds in this country,[23] even[24] in small inns. 8. The following morning we were up[25] very early and before eight o'clock were ready[26] for the start. 9. Although only a light cloud was to be seen[27] here and there in the[28] sky, the landlord warned us of a coming storm and advised us to wait until the morrow.[29] 10. Several other guests, who also wished to take a view of[30] the Brocken, followed the landlord's advice; we had reason later to wish we had done[31] the same. 11. I was eager to go at once, however, and my friend shared my impatience[32]; accordingly we started alone. 12. To describe[33] the charm of the gentle morning breeze,[34] the singing birds and the manifold beauties that a glorious nature everywhere offered, requires[35] a poet's pen; I shall not attempt it. 13. After we had climbed[36] about an hour, we came to[37] the "Ilsenstein," a rock with a height of 300 feet that stands close by the mountain-road.[38] 14. With little difficulty we climbed to[39] its summit, where we sat for some time and rested.

Vocabulary.

allein', *adj.*, *adv.*, **alone.**

Aufbruch, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), departure, start, [**up-break**].

Augenschein, *m. s. 2*, view, [**eye-shine**].

benutzen, *v. w.*, use, employ.

beschreiben, *v. s.* (beschrieb, beschrieben), describe, [**-shrive**, *-scribe*].

besteigen, *v. s.* (bestieg, bestiegen), climb.

bieten, *v. s.* (bot, geboten), offer, **bid.**
dicht, *adj.*, close, dense, thick, [**tight**].
erreichen, *v. w.*, **-reach**, come to.
fahren, *v. s.* (fuhr, gefahren, *aux.* sein), travel, go, [**fare**].
Felsen, *m. s. 1*, rock.
Gasthaus, *n. s. 3*, inn, [**guest-house**].
Gipfel, *m. s. 1*, peak, summit.
herrlich, *adj.*, glorious, splendid.
Höhe, *f. w.*, **height.**
klimmen, *v. s.* (klomm, geklommen, *aux.* sein), **climb.**
mannigfaltig, *adj.*, **manifold.**
Meile, *f. w.*, *mile.*
Mittag, *m. s. 2*, **mid-day**, noon.
nachdem', *sub. conj.*, after.
raten, *v. s.* (riet, geraten), advise, [**read, rede**].
Reiz, *m. s. 2*, charm.
sanft, *adj.*, gentle, soft.
steigen, *v. s.* (stieg, gestiegen, *aux.* sein), climb, mount, [**sty**].
teilen, *v. w.*, share, [**deal**].
Ursache, *f. w.*, cause, reason.
versprechen, *v. s.* (versprach, versprochen), promise.
warnen, *v. w.*, **warn** (of, vor, *dat.*).
westlich, *adj.*, **west**; *adv.*, **west-ward.**
Wolke, *f. w.*, cloud, [**welkin**].

NOTES.—[1] This exercise is a continuation of the letter in Ex. XXXIV b, as the Reading Lesson (XXXV) upon which it is partly based is a continuation of XXXIV. The account of the Fußwanderung is continued in Exercises XXXVI b, XXXVII b and XXXIX b, which are similarly related to the respective Reading Lessons.—[2] **by rail**, mit der Eisenbahn.—[3] **university-town**, Universitätsstadt.—[4] **Saale** is fem., as are most Ger. rivers; cf. § 233. 2 and *b*.—[5] **took**; use benutzen.—[6] **by way of**, über.—[7] **as far as**, bis nach.—[8] **tramp**, Fußwanderung.—[9] **proper**: express in Ger. by the adv.—[10] **walked**, gingen (zu Fuß).—[11] **at the foot**, am Fuße.—[12] **distant**; cf. p. 146, n. 4; place at the end.—[13] **overnight**, die Nacht über.—[14] **to start**, *get under way*, sich auf den Weg machen; **for**, nach.—[15] **shortly**, kurz.—[16] **climb**, here besteigen; cf. p. 146, n. 9, and § 208. 1, *a*.—[17] **Brocken**, (der) Brocken; the highest summit of the Harz Mts.—[18] **of which**, = *whose*.—[19] **hours' walk**, Stunden; acc. of measure, cf. § 266. 3.—[20] **had . . . dinner**, zu Mittag gegessen hatten; **at**, in.—[21] **comfortable**, bequem; but Ger. hotels always use the borrowed word komforta'bel to describe their beds.—[22] **something [that], was**.—[23] **in this country**, hier zu Lande.—[24] **even**, sogar.—[25] **up**, auf.—

[26] **ready,** bereit, at the end; cf. further § 418. 5.—[27] **to be seen;** cf. § 367. 4.—[28] **in the,** am.—[29] **the morrow** = *the following day.*—[30] **take a view of,** in Augenschein nehmen; cf. p. 144, n. 11.—[31] **had done**; use plup. subj.—[32] **impatience,** Ungeduld.—[33] **To describe** is the subject of 'requires' and in Ger. should immediately precede it; thus: Den Reiz . . . bot, zu beschreiben.—[34] **morning breeze,** Morgenluft.—[35] **requires,** verlangt.—[36] **climbed;** use steigen here.—[37] **to,** an with acc.—[38] **mountain-road,** Bergweg.—[39] **climbed to;** use klimmen with auf and acc.

EXERCISE XXXV c.

1. His conduct did not please me at all; I asked[1] him to be silent, but he only spoke the more. 2. We have gained a faithful friend in[2] him; he has already helped us much and will help us still more. 3. Did you understand[3] what he said? He speaks somewhat indistinctly. 4. Children, why did you not shut[3] the gate when you came out of the garden? 5. When did he die? No one thought that he would die so soon. 6. He seemed somewhat better when[4] I saw him last week. 7. Let him keep[5] his word and avoid bad company. 8. I should gladly offer him help if he followed my wishes, but he evidently has no desire to do so.[6] 9. If they had dug a little deeper, they would have found gold in abundance. 10. He met me in the park and asked me to drive home with him. 11. The knights of olden[7] days fought for[8] love and honor. 12. The poor fellow was suffering with[9] toothache; I gave him a quarter and sent him to a[10] dentist. 13. What is your friend's name?[11] Perhaps he had seen me before,[12] but he evidently did not know[3] me. 14. Please speak more slowly; when you were speaking last evening, I understood[3] every word. 15. In[13] this way we compelled him to tell the truth. 16. He drew the purse from his pocket and laid it before me on the table.[14] 17. His friends did everything that lay in their power, to be helpful to him. 18. His present conduct proves that he knows neither gratitude nor honor.

VOCABULARY.[7]

behilflich, *adj.*, **help-ful.**
beweisen, *v. s.* (bewies, bewiesen), prove, [**-wise**].
Dankbarkeit, *f. w.*, **thank-fulness**, gratitude.
desto, *adv.*, so much the, the (*with compar.*).
Ehre, *f. w.*, honor.
fechten, *v. s.* (focht, gefochten), **fight.**
Fülle, *f. w.*, abundance, plenty, [**full-ness**].
graben, *v. s.* (grub, gegraben), dig, [**grave.**].
jetzig, *adj.*, present, (*from* jetzt).
Lust, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), desire, [**lust**].
Macht, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), power, **might.**
Ritter, *m. s. 1*, knight, [**rider**].
sterben, *v. s.* (starb, gestorben, *aux.* sein), die, [**starve**].
tief, *adj.*, **deep.**
um, *prep.* (*acc.*), around, about; um . . . zu, *with inf.*, to, in order to.
un'deutlich, *adj.*, indistinct.
wann, *adv.*, *interrog. only*, **when.**
Weise, *f. w.*, way, manner, **wise.**
Wunsch, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), **wish.**
Zahn, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), **tooth.**
Zahnarzt, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* -ärzte), dentist.
zwingen, *v. s.* (zwang, gezwungen), compel, force, [**twinge**].

NOTES.—[1] **asked**; cf. Ex. XXXIV b, n. 20.—[2] **in**, an with dat.—[3] Use perf.; cf. § 351.—[4] **when**, als, not wenn or wann; cf. § 381. 1, *a*, *b*, *i*, *k*, *l*.—[5] **let him keep**; cf. § 419. 3, *a*.—[6] **so**, das, as object of 'to do'.—[7] **olden**; use comp. of alt.—[8] **for**, um.—[9] **with**, an.—[10] **to a**, zum.—[11] **What is your friend's name?** = *How is your friend called?*—[12] **before**, here schon.—[13] **in**, in with dat. or auf with acc.—[14] **before me . . . table**; see p. 98, n. 1.

EXERCISE XXXVI b.[1]

[Cf. Reading Lesson, p. 146.]

1. Even from this point we had a broad and beautiful view that I shall not easily forget. 2. After we had sat up there nearly an hour, my companion said[2]: "Come, let us continue our climb,[3] for we still have a good distance before us." 3. We had been chatting about the glorious

view, and did not see the clouds that had slowly risen[4] behind us. 4. But now they were mounting higher and higher,[5] and we understood only too well[6] that the thunderstorm, of which the landlord had spoken, would come. 5. We had thought of[7] his warning several times, although until now it[8] had seemed to be without foundation.[9] 6. Neither[10] of us thought of a return to the inn, and this would have been quite impossible, for we had already come more than four miles. 7. Nothing remained to us,[11] therefore, but[12] to hurry forward as fast as possible[12] toward our destination. 8. As we strode along[13] we cast glances now and then[14] at the sky, which was growing[15] darker and darker. 9. We tried to run a short distance, but found it too fatiguing. 10. Every few minutes[16] a blinding flash darted[17] across the sky. 11. When the storm finally burst,[18] the heavens seemed to pour [the] rain upon the earth in veritable torrents.[19] 12. The trees afforded no shelter, and besides[20] it would have been exceedingly dangerous to stand under them in[21] such a wind. 13. In every direction branches were breaking and falling to the ground,[22] and the lightning struck[23] several of the largest trees.

VOCABULARY.

Aussicht, *f. w.*, view, prospect, [**out-sight**].
biegen, *v. s.* (bog, gebogen), bend, [**bow**].
blenden, *v. w.*, blind, dazzle.
Blitz, *m. s. 2*, flash, lightning.
droben, *adv.*, up there.
ermüden, *v. w.*, tire, fatigue.
gewähren, *v. w.*, afford, grant.
Gewitter, *n. s. 1*, thunderstorm, [**-weather**].
gießen, *v. s.* (goß, gegossen), pour.
indem', *sub. conj.*, while, since.
los'brechen, *v. s.* (*aux.* sein), **break loose**, burst.
mehrmals, *adv.*, several times, [**more-**].
Obdach, *n. s. 3*, shelter, [**-thatch**].
plaudern, *v. w.*, chat.
Rückkehr, *f. w.*, return.

schießen, *v. s.* (schoß, geschossen), **shoot.**
schlagen, *v. s.* (schlug, geschlagen), strike, [**slay**].
schreiten, *v. s.* (schritt, geschritten, *aux.* sein), step, stride.
sogar', *adv.*, actually, even.
Strecke, *f. w.*, **stretch,** distance.
Strom, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ö), **stream.**
vergessen, *v. s.* (vergaß, vergessen), **forget.**
vorwärts, *adv.*, **forward(s).**
Warnung, *f. w.*, **warning.**
werfen, *v. s.* (warf, geworfen), throw, cast, [**warp**].
Wind, *m. s. 2*, **wind.**
Ziel, *n. s. 2*, aim, goal, destination.

NOTES.—[1] See Ex. XXXV b, n. 1.—[2] **said**; note that inverted order is required because of the preceding sub. clause; cf. § 200.—[3] **let us continue our climb,** = *let us climb further.*—[4] **risen**; use steigen.—[5] **higher and higher,** immer höher.—[6] **only too well,** allzugut.—[7] **of,** an with acc.; cf. § 377, an, *b*, (2).—[8] **it must follow 'although' in Ger.**; cf. §§ 420. 3; 426. 2.—[9] **foundation,** Grund.—[10] **neither,** Keiner.—[11] **remained to us,** blieb uns . . . übrig.—[12] **as fast as possible,** möglichst schnell, rather than so schnell als möglich, because but is transl. by als.—[13] **along,** weiter.—[14] **now and then,** dann und wann.—[15] **was growing,** i. e., *becoming.*—[16] **Every few minutes,** Alle paar Minuten.—[17] **darted,** = *shot.*—[18] **burst,** losbrach; **heavens,** position? cf. § 200.—[19] **in veritable torrents,** in wahrhaften Strömen.—[20] **besides,** außerdem.—[21] **in,** bei; cf. § 377, bei, (3). The phrase 'in such a wind' should follow 'dangerous' in Ger.—[22] **to the ground,** auf die Erde.—[23] **struck**; 'to strike,' of lightning, = schlagen in, with acc.

EXERCISE XXXVI c.

1. We slept only a few hours, for our neighbor's dog howled the whole night long.[1] 2. This morning he bit one of the gardener's children and they[2] have just shot him. 3. They fear that he was mad, but perhaps he was not.[3] 4. The cold was not so great, but a high[4] wind was blowing[5] and therefore it seemed to be very cold. 5. I asked him several times to tell me what he had done, but he was silent. 6. When I lived in the country I had a saddle-horse and rode several miles nearly every day. 7. One seldom sees as good a[6] rider as you formerly were.

confess that he had been a fool, and it would have done no good.[14] 9. After we had got wet through and through, the rest made little difference to us.[15] 10. You must not[16] think that we regretted our trip; our wet clothes did not trouble us, only that they were somewhat heavy. 11. It was a full hour before we could begin climbing again, and we did not reach the top until[17] [at] about four o'clock. 12. You will be able to understand what a[18] welcome sight the Brockenhaus[19] was, for now we were at our journey's end and could laugh at[20] our perilous adventure. 13. We did not want to go to[21] bed, so we were obliged to sit down[22] by the stove and dry our clothes. 14. On account of a thick fog that lay upon the Brocken, one could see nothing of the famous view; it was as if[23] one were looking into a great white sea. 15. We were quite content, however, to be in a human habitation once more,[24] and the beauties of nature concerned us very little for the time being.

VOCABULARY.

Anblick, *m. s. 2*, view, sight.
bereuen, *v. w.*, regret, -rue.
Busch, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), bush.
etwa, *adv.*, about, approximately.
furchtsam, *adj.*, timid, [fright-some].
genießen, *v. s.* (genoß, genossen), enjoy.
geschehen, *v. s.*, (geschah, geschehen, *aux.* sein), happen.
gestehen, *v. s.*, gestand, gestanden), confess.
heftig, *adj.*, violent.
kümmern, *v. w.*, trouble, concern.
lachen, *v. w.*, laugh.
menschlich, *adj.*, human.
Narr, *m. w.*, fool.
naß, *adj.*, wet, [nas-ty].
Nebel, *m. s. 1*, fog, mist.
trocknen, *v. w.*, dry.
übertrei'ben, *v. s.* (übertrieb', übertrie'ben), exaggerate, [over-drive].
versichern, *v. w.*, assure.
vor'läufig, *adv.*, for the present, for the time being.
vorü'ber, *adv.*, past, -over.
zufrie'den, *adj.*, content.

NOTES.—[1] See Ex. XXXV b, n. 1.—[2] **no**, nicht. —[3] **in**, bei.—[4] **to keep our footing** = *to remain on our feet.*—[5] **seized**; express here by greifen nach.—[6] **sapling**, Bäumchen.—[7] **exaggerated**; the pple. is übertrieben, the prefix über- being here inseparable, in which case the ge- of the perf. pple. is omitted. The conjugation of separable compound verbs will be explained later on (§§ 206-15). Certain prefixes are always insep. (§ 208) and are never accented; a few are doubtful (§ 212); most are sep.—[8] **to consider . . . a good joke**, (object) für . . . zu halten; cf. § 265. 3, *c.*—[9] **however**, aber, after 'us'; cf. § 379. 1.—[10] **for**, seit. —[11] **were . . . able**, use perf.—[12] **served**; use geschehen, *happen to.*—[13] **passed . . . both**, fuhr uns beiden durch den Kopf; for uns cf. p. 94, n. 3 and § 259, *a;* for Kopf cf. § 240. 2.—[14] **would have done no good**; cf. p. 156, n. 7.—[15] **made little difference to us** = *concerned us little.*—[16] **must not**; do not use müssen.—[17] **not until**, erst.—[18] **what a**, welch.—[19] **Brockenhaus**; name of an inn on the summit of the Brocken.—[20] **at**, über (acc.).—[21] **to**, zu.—[22] **to sit down**; use sich setzen; i. e., when motion is expressed, the German says, *to seat oneself*, sitzen being used of *position only;* similarly liegen and sich legen, whereas in Eng. *lie* and *lie down* (= *lay oneself*) are used.—[23] **as if**, als ob, with verb in subjunc.; cf. § 359. 3. —[24] **once more**, wieder.

EXERCISE XXXVII c.

1. How can he help me? What does he know of my needs? 2. He could neither sit nor stand without great pain and therefore had to lie in bed[1] (for) several weeks. 3. Shall you[2] go to the theater to-morrow evening? No, not until Friday evening. 4. Will you[2] come with us to the theater this evening? 5. Shall you be able to finish your work early enough? You are always very busy Monday evening, are you not? 6. You must not[3] think that I am obliged to do this if I do not want to.[4] 7. People[5] may say what they will; we have tried everything we can, but it is of no avail.[6] 8. Children, you know that you ought to study more diligently if you want[7] to learn anything. 9. You will certainly have to improve your work, else you must remain another[8] year in this class. 10. I ought to visit my old teacher, Mr. Müller, and I should really like to see him again, but so far[9] I haven't been able to. 11. One can't[10] smoke here; shall[11] we step into the

adjoining room?[12] 12. I might have been able to believe his story, if he had not always been such a rogue. 13. Many would have wished to help him, but how is one to know in such a[13] case! 14. Rumor[14] has much (that is) ill to say about[15] him. 15. As far as[16] I can learn, he fully[17] deserves his punishment; it is said that this is not[18] his first crime. 16. What[19] does he want to lie so outrageously for? He surely[20] must know that no one can believe him.[21] 17. My little brother would like very much (to go) along, but we do not want him in the boat, because he doesn't know how[22] to swim. 18. He could learn[23] very easily if he were allowed to try [it]. 19. Tell's shot might have[24] killed his child, and in that case Gessler would have had to die too. 20. They had been compelled to work so hard for several weeks before the examination that they were utterly worn-out and could not do their best.

VOCABULARY.

Bedürfnis, *n. s. 2*, need.
böse, *adj.*, bad, ill.
erfahren, *v. s.* (erfuhr, erfahren), ascertain, learn, [-fare].
Freitag, *m. s. 2*, **Friday.**
Gerücht, *n. s. 2*, rumor.
lügen, *v. s.* (log, gelogen), **lie**, tell a falsehood.
nochmals, *adv.*, again, once more.
rauchen, *v. w.*, smoke, [**reek**].
Schelm, *m. s. 2*, rogue, scamp.
Schuß, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* üsse), **shot.**
schwimmen, *v. s.* (schwamm, geschwommen, *aux.* sein), **swim.**
Strafe, *f. w.*, punishment.
töten, *v. w.*, kill.
treten, *v. s.* (trat, getreten, *aux.* sein), step, **tread.**
unverschämt, *adj.*, **-shame**less, outrageous.
Verbrechen, *n. s. 1*, crime.
verdienen, *v. w.*, deserve, earn.
vollends, *adv.*, completely, utterly.
weder, *conj.*, neither; weder . . . noch, neither . . . nor.
weil, *sub. conj.*, because, [**while**].
wozu', *adv.*, to what end, what for.

NOTES.—[1] **in bed**; position?—[2] **shall you, will you**; observe that the first expresses expectation (werden), the second wish or willingness (wollen). So in indirect statement note the difference between Er sagte daß er nicht gehen würde and Er sagte daß er nicht gehen wollte.—[3] **must not**; do not use müssen.—[4] **to** may be left without equivalent in the Ger. sentence or may be expressed by es as object of 'want'; cf. § 303. 5.—[5] **people**; if man be used, it must be repeated for 'they'; man cannot be the antecedent of a pers. pron.—[6] **is of no avail** = *avails nothing, does no good;* cf. p. 156, n. 7.—[7] **want**; not brauchen, which = *need.*—[8] **another**; see Ex. XXIII a, n. 14.—[9] **so far**, bis jetzt.—[10] **can't**; not können.—[11] **shall**, wollen.—[12] **adjoining room**, Nebenzimmer. [13] **in such a**, in solchem.—[14] Use generic art.—[15] **about**, von.—[16] **As far as**, So viel, or Was.—[17] **fully**, vollends.—[18] **it is said that this is not** = *this is said not to be.*—[19] **What for**, Wozu.—[20] **surely**, ja, or doch.—[21] **him**; dat. of person (but acc. of thing); cf. § 257. 1, *a.*—[22] **know how**; here können.—[23] **learn**; not erfahren, cf. sent. 15.—[24] **might have**, i.e., *could have;* cf. § 192.

IDIOMATIC USES OF THE MODAL AUXILIARIES.

EXERCISE XXXVIII a.

[Cf. Colloquy, p. 157.]

1. I was just about to go walking when he came to my room, but I did not like to tell him so.[1] 2. Perhaps some people might[2] find him entertaining,[3] but for my part[4] I do not care at all for[5] his company. 3. He is said to be a great scholar,[6] and he claims to have made[7] an important discovery. 4. That may[8] be, but in spite of all that[9] one might find him very tiresome. 5. We were going to buy[10] tickets for the opera this evening, but if Mr. N. is to sing the principal-rôle, we should prefer[11] to stay at home. 6. Yes, indeed[12]; I do not like his voice in any[13] rôle, and in this one he is said to have been especially unsatisfactory. 7. We have long[14] been wishing to hear this opera, but who wants to pay such prices for a poor performance? 8. My cousin pretends[15] to have seen footpads in the park a couple of weeks ago, but you know one must not[16]

believe his adventures too readily. 9. That is all[17] nonsense! He may[18] at the most have met a beggar there, but as for[19] footpads, I believe they were his own invention. 10. I think we may feel without concern, and in case of need[20] we could both defend ourselves pretty well. 11. Even if we[21] had to lose all that we have on[22] us, we could comfort ourselves with the knowledge that the robbers had got little for their trouble. 12. Well, we must start on the way back[23]; I see the clock on the tower of the city-hall is on the point of striking[24] eleven; we ought to have gone a half hour ago. 13. May I count on you for to-morrow evening? I shall be obliged to work only until half-past eight, at the latest till a quarter to nine.[25] 14. I should like to come right well,[26] as you know, but mother told me I must[27] stay home Tuesday evening because she expected[27] guests. 15. Then you'll have to stay home, of course, but I am very sorry on your account as well as on my own,[28] for I know how little you like society.

VOCABULARY.

Dienstag, *m. s. 2*, Tuesday.
eben, *adv.*, **even**, just.
Erfindung, *f. w.*, invention.
gelehrt, *ppl. adj.*, learned; *as subst.*,[6] scholar.
höchstens, *adv.*, at the most.
Notfall, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), case of **need**, emergency.
Räuber, *m. s. 1*, **robber**; Straßenräuber, footpad.
rechnen, *v.w.*, count, **reckon**, (on, auf *and acc.*).
Rückweg, *m. s. 2*, return, **way** back.
Sorge, *f. w.*, care, concern, [**sorrow**].
spätestens, *adv.*, at the latest.
Stadthaus, *n. s. 3*, city-hall.
trösten, *v. w.*, comfort, [**trust**].
trotz, *prep.* (*gen. or dat.*), in spite of.
ungenügend, *ppl. adj.*, unsatisfactory.
unterhal'ten, *v. s.* (unterhielt', unterhal'ten),[29] entertain.
verlieren, *v. s.* (verlor, verloren), lose, [**forlorn**].
verteidigen, *v. w.*, defend.
Wissen, *n. s.* (*no pl.*), knowledge.

NOTES.—[1] **I did not like to tell him so,** ich habe es ihm nicht sagen mögen.—[2] **might,** dürften.—[3] **entertaining,** unterhaltend.—[4] **part;** Teil in this sense is neut.; cf. also § 235. 3.—[5] **care for,** mögen.—[6] **scholar,** cf. § 290. 2, *a.*—[7] **claims to have made,** will . . . gemacht haben.—[8] **may;** kann, if possibility is expressed; mag, if concession; dürfte, if doubtful assent; cf. p. 158, n. 1.—[9] **in spite of all that,** trotz alle dem; cf. § 317. 1.—[10] **were going to buy,** wollten . . . kaufen; observe that 'to' is always omitted with a dep. inf. after a modal aux., cf. § 366. 1.—[11] **we should prefer,** wir möchten lieber; order ? cf. § 200.—[12] **indeed,** wohl.—[13] **not in any** = *in no.*—[14] **long,** seit langem.—[15] **pretends,** will.—[16] **must not;** use dürfen.—[17] **all,** lauter.—[18] **may,** kann.—[19] **as for,** was . . . betrifft.—[20] **in case of need,** im Notfall.—[21] **Even if we,** Wenn wir auch.—[22] **on,** bei.—[23] **start on the way back,** sich auf den Rückweg machen.—[24] **is on the point of striking,** will eben . . . schlagen.—[25] **a quarter to nine;** cf. p. 89, n. 3.—[26] **right well,** recht gern.—[27] **must, expected;** pres. subjunc., cf. § 361. 2 and *a.*—[28] **as well . . . own,** so wohl als meinetwegen.—[29] Cf. Ex. XXXVII b, n. 7.

PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXIX b.[1]

[Cf. Reading Lesson, p. 163.]

1. We found a number of guests in the Brockenhaus, some[2] of whom had been hindered by the thunder-storm from making the return-journey.[3] 2. The inn was evidently pretty well filled[4] and we feared that no room[5] could be found for us. 3. We were told that one small room still remained,[6] which, however, was intended[7] for only one person. 4. The landlord said he would have a hammock brought,[8] if one of us would[9] sleep in it. 5. That we were quite satisfied with this, need[10] hardly be said. 6. After supper the guests were gathered[11] about the tables, and there was smoking[12] and chatting and singing until half-past ten. 7. We became acquainted with some of the guests and found them right jolly fellows. 8. We had to relate our adventure several times and could now heartily enjoy the jokes that were made at[13] our expense. 9. Of course everything was meant good-

EXERCISE XXXIX c.

1. Many tickets of admission[1] are sold for which no seats are reserved. 2. When the seats are all sold, the doors should be closed. 3. The main-doors[2] of the church are made of[3] iron; they are opened only on Sunday. 4. I wanted to help him, but I was not allowed to. 5. His books are so entertainingly written that they are read with the greatest enjoyment by old and young. 6. I will tell my story, of course, but I know that I[4] shall not be believed. 7. The rings have been found where they were hidden by the thieves. 8. How could it[5] be helped? The letter had been written and sent before I was told of it. 9. Some of my books are being bound now; I have still a good many[6] that are not bound. 10. A fine new store is building[7] on the next street; I do not know what is to be sold there. 11. Among the villagers a most peculiar German is spoken. 12. It is not to be thought[8] that this can really be done. 13. The work by which[9] Goethe had become world-famous subsequently[10] became extremely distasteful to him. 14. He has not been seen here for several days, and it is feared[11] that he cannot be found. 15. If his story could be believed, I should have something done[12] for him; that is understood. 16. That he is not speaking the truth, however, is easily proved, for his adventures are never told twice alike.[13] 17. I cannot use such[14] thick paper for foreign letters; it weighs too much. 18. Instead of answering[15] the question he cast a dark glance at his opponent and strode from the room.

VOCABULARY.

anſtatt, *prep.* (*gen.*), in-stead of.

Anzahl, *f.* (*no pl.*), number, quantity.

ausländiſch, *adj.*, foreign, [outlandish].

Bewohner, *m. s. 1*, inhabitant, occupant.

binden, *v. s.* (band, gebunden), **bind.**
dick, *adj.*, **thick.**
Eintritt, *m. s.* (*no pl.*), **admission, [-tread].**
Eisen, *n. s. 1*, **iron.**
erlauben, *v. w.*, **allow, permit.**
finster, *adj.*, **dark.**
gebrauchen, *v. w.*, **use.**
Gegner, *m. s. 1*, **opponent, adversary.**
Handlung, *f. w.*, **shop, store, [handle-].**
nie, *adv.*, **never.**
Papier', *n. s. 2*, *paper.*
reservie'ren, *v. w.*, *reserve.*
Sitz, *m. s. 2*, **seat, [sit].**
Sonntag, *m, s. 2*, **Sunday.**
verbergen, *v. s.* (verbarg, verborgen), **hide, conceal, [bury].**
verkaufen, *v. w.*, **sell.**
widerwärtig, *adj.*, **obnoxious, distasteful.**
wiegen, *v. s.* (wog, gewogen), **weigh.**

NOTES.—[1] **tickets of admission**, Eintrittsbillette.—[2] **main-doors**, Hauptthüren.—[3] **of**, aus; cf. §377, aus, (5).—[4] **I**; use the dative, the impers. passive being required.—[5] **it**, dem; cf. n. 4.—[6] **a good many**, eine Anzahl.—[7] **is building**; use reflexive form.—[8] **is not to be thought**; use reflexive with lassen; cf. §§ 199, 366. 1, *a.*—[9] **by which**, wodurch; cf. § 377, durch, (2).—[10] **subsequently**, nachher.—[11] **it is feared**; substitute active with man.—[12] **have done**, thun lassen; cf. § 366. 1, *a.*—[13] **alike**, auf dieselbe Weise.—[14] **such**, so.—[15] **Instead of answering**, Anstatt . . . zu beantworten; cf. § 367. 6.

REFLEXIVE AND IMPERSONAL VERBS.

EXERCISE XL a.

[Cf. Colloquy, p. 168.]

1. We enjoyed ourselves capitally last summer in the country. 2. City life[1] never pleases me particularly well, and after an absence of four months it is hard to accustom myself to it[2] again. 3. I long for[3] the fields and woods and mountains and always rejoice at[4] the return of spring. 4. It is a question of economy, too, for in this respect[5] the country has a considerable advantage. 5. We go to[6] the country now and then for[7] a couple of days during the winter, but it is scarcely worth while,[8] and besides I nearly

always take cold. 6. I saw you at the theater last evening; I suppose you were delighted[9] with the piece, as most of[10] the spectators seemed to be. 7. I was vexed that we had to come so late, but we saw the terrible duel in the third act, at least. 8. Have you seen George lately?[11] I wonder what has become of[12] him. 9. He ought to be ashamed (of himself) to visit his friends so seldom. 10. Perhaps he really lacks[13] the time, for I have noticed that he is working very hard; you know he has to earn his bread and butter.[14] 11. Do you remember that fellow we met one evening[15] at Mr. Müller's? 12. Well, for politeness' sake I have let[16] myself be bored to death[17] and I suppose I must continue to put up with it.[18] 13. He comes to my rooms[19] and talks and smokes until I can scarcely keep[20] awake. 14. He cares no more about[21] bad air and bad tobacco than a salamander cares[22] about fire. 15. Well, you flatter yourself on your knowledge[23] of the weather; will it rain or snow to-night? 16. It is already raining a little; I am glad that I brought[24] my umbrella. Good-bye till to-morrow.

Vocabulary.

Abwesenheit, *f. w.*, absence.
Akt, *m. s. 2, act.*
amüsie'ren (sich), *v. w.*, enjoy (*amuse*) one's self.
ärgern (sich), *v. w.*, be vexed.
bemerken, *v. w.*, notice, remark.
beträchtlich, *adj.*, considerable.
ergötzen (sich), *v. w.*, delight *or* take pleasure in (an, *dat.*).
erinnern, *v. w.*, remind; — sich (*with gen.*), remember.
erkälten (sich), *v. w.*, take cold.
gewöhnen (sich), *v. w.*, accustom one's self to (an, *acc.*).
handeln, *v. w.*; es handelt sich um, it is a question of.
Höflichkeit, *f. w.*, politeness.
lohnen (sich), *v. w.*, be worth while.
quälen (sich), *v. w.*, be tormented, be bored.
regnen, *v. w.*, rain.
Salaman'der, *m. s. 1, salamander.*
schämen (sich), *v. w.*, be ashamed, [shame].

schmeicheln (sich, *dat.*), *v. w.*, flatter one's self.
schneien, *v. w.*, **snow.**
schrecklich, *adj.*, terrible.
sehnen (sich), *v. w.*, long.
Sparsamkeit, *f. w.*, economy, [**spare-some-**].
Tabak', *m. s. 2, tobacco.*
Vorzug, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), advantage.
wach, *adj.*, **a-wake.**
Wiederkehr, *f.* (*no pl.*), return.
wie'dersehen, *v. s.*, **see again;** auf Wiedersehen, good-bye.
wundern, *v. w.*, cause to **wonder;** mich wundert's, I wonder.
Zuschauer, *m. s. 1*, spectator.
Zweikampf, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), duel.

NOTES.—[1] **City life,** das Stadtleben.—[2] **to it,** daran.—[3] **for,** nach.—[4] **at,** über with acc.—[5] **respect,** Hinsicht.—[6] **to,** auf.—[7] **for,** auf with acc.; cf. p. 68, n. 2.—[8] **worth while,** der Mühe (gen.) wert.—[9] **I suppose you were delighted,** Sie haben sich wohl . . . ergötzt.—[10] **as most of the,** wie die meisten.—[11] **lately,** in der letzten Zeit; **George,** Georg'.—[12] **of,** aus.—[13] **he lacks,** fehlt ihm; 'time' becomes the subject.—[14] **bread and butter,** Butterbrot.—[15] **one evening;** use adv. gen., cf. § 251. 2, *a.*—[16] **let;** lassen, like the modal auxiliaries, has the perf. pple. without ge- when used with an inf.; cf. §§ 188. 3, *a*, 326. 2, *b.*—[17] **to death,** tot, i.e., *dead;* cf. § 110. 1, *b.*—[18] **I suppose I must continue to put up with it,** ich muß mir's wohl noch immer gefallen lassen.—[19] **rooms,** Wohnung.—[20] **keep,** bleiben.—[21] **cares no more about,** kümmert sich nicht mehr um.—[22] **cares:** position after als?—[23] **on your knowledge,** Ihrer Kenntnis.—[24] **brought,** mitbrachte, from mitbringen, *bring along.*

COMPOUND VERBS.

EXERCISE XLI b.

[Cf. Reading Lesson, p. 177.]

1. My dear Mr. Müller![1] First of all[2] I want to express to you my sincere[3] thanks for your most kind letter and the advice contained in it.[4] 2. Whether I shall be able to continue[5] my studies in Germany, or whether I shall be obliged to leave for[6] America in the near future,[7] is hard to say. 3. What I should prefer to do,[8] is of course not a hard question to decide. 4. When I had been here only (a) short time, I wrote you how fond I had grown of

the German life and the German people. 5. After a longer stay[9] I can repeat with still warmer words what I then said. 6. My parents wish likewise that I may enjoy still further the advantages[10] which Germany offers to the student. 7. It depends solely on whether[11] my father finds it possible to let me remain longer. 8. I know that he is by no means a rich man, and in his last letter he spoke of the hard times that had set in[12] since (the) beginning of the new year. 9. I answered[13] his letter immediately and begged[14] him to explain his position exactly to me. 10. His answer should arrive by the next mail, and I shall of course be glad to submit entirely to his wishes. 11. In this way[15] I can best prove my gratitude for all that he has done for me. 12. I nevertheless cherish the hope of coming[16] to Germany again, and I intend to resume with you the studies that have been so helpful to me during my present stay. 13. As I shall probably soon have to leave Leipzig, I have already planned my route.[17] 14. I shall go by way of Cassel to Frankfurt, where I shall visit Goethe's birthplace and other objects of interest. 15. From Frankfurt I shall go by train to Mainz[18] and then make the trip down the Rhine[19] to Cologne. 16. I shall probably interrupt the journey at[20] Bingen and visit the National Monument[21] on the Niederwald. 17. I shall stay in Cologne several days. I am especially eager to see the great cathedral, for even the pictures of it have made a powerful impression upon me. 18. Meanwhile I shall be able to rest myself before resuming[22] my journey to Rotterdam and beginning[22] the ocean-voyage.

Vocabulary.

Note.—Separable composition will be indicated by an accent; inseparable only where it might be doubtful. For principal parts see § 331. The following compound verbs have been introduced in the preceding exercises:

Inseparable: *Weak:* bedeuten, beeilen, befehlen, begleiten, behaupten, belohnen, bemerken, benutzen, bereuen, besetzen, bestimmen, besuchen, bezahlen, er-

götzen, erinnern, erkälten, erklären, erlauben, ermüden, erreichen, erwachen, erwarten, erwecken, erzählen, gebrauchen, gehören, genügen, gewöhnen, übersetzen, verbessern, verdienen, vergeuden, verhindern, verkaufen, verlangen, versammeln, versichern, versuchen, verteidigen, vollenden.—*Strong:* befinden, begehen, beginnen, behalten, bekommen, besehen, bestehen, besteigen, betragen, betreffen, beweisen, enthalten, erfahren, erhalten, gefallen, gelingen, genießen, geschehen, gestehen, gewinnen, übertreiben, unterhalten, verbergen, verbleiben, vergehen, vergessen, vergleichen, verlassen, verlieren, vermeiden, verschwinden, versprechen, verstehen, zerfallen.

Separable: darstellen (*w*), einschränken (*w.*), losbrechen (*s.*), wiedersehen (*s.*).

Abbildung, *f. w.*, picture.
ab'reisen (sein), *v. w.*, depart, leave.
an'kommen (sein), *v. s.* arrive.
Aufenthalt, *m. s. 2*, stay, sojourn.
auf'halten (sich), *v. s.*, stay.
aus'einan'dersetzen, *v. w.*, explain.
aus'ruhen (sich), *v. w.*, rest one's self.
aus'sprechen, *v. s.*, express.
beant'worten, *v. w.*, answer.
begierig, *adj.*, eager.
dar'bieten, *v. s.*, offer.
Denkmal, *n. s. 2–3*, monument.
Eindruck, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), impression.
entscheiden, *v. s.* (entschied, entschieden), decide.
entwerfen, *v. s.*, outline, plan.
Fahrt, *f. w.*, journey, trip.
fort'setzen, *v. w.*, continue.
gedenken, *v. w. irr.*, intend.
gewaltig, *adj.*, powerful.
gleichfalls, *adv.*, like-wise.
hegen, *v. w.*, cherish, [hedge].
herein'brechen, *v. s.* (*aux.* sein), set in.
indes'sen, *adv.*, meanwhile.
jedoch, *adv.*, nevertheless.
lieb'gewinnen, *v. s.*, grow fond of.
Post, *f. w.*, mail, *post.*
unterbrech'en, *v. s.*, interrupt.
unterwer'fen, *v. s.*, subject; — sich, submit (to, *dat.*).
verweilen, *v. w.*, tarry, stay.
wie'derauf'nehmen, *v. s.*, resume.
wiederho'len, *v. w.*, repeat; wiederholt', *ppl. adv.*, repeatedly.

NOTES.—[1] The following letter is based in part on the Reading Lesson, Ex. XLI.—[2] First of all, Vor allem.—[3] sincere, herzlich.—[4] the advice contained in it, den darin enthaltenen Rat. This construction is frequent in written German; it is best turned in Eng. by an ap-

positional ppl. phrase, as in the present instance, or by a relative clause. The phrase may be much longer than here, but will occasion no difficulty if it be noted that everything between the art. (or pron.) and the noun is attributive to the noun. The pple. of trans. verbs used adjectively regularly has passive force, cf. § 369. 1, *a*, *b*.—[5] **Whether I shall be able . . .**; note the special case of dep. order, cf. § 194.—[6] **for**, nach.—[7] **in the near future**, in der nächsten Zeit.—[8] **should prefer to do**, lieber thun möchte.—[9] **After a longer stay**, Nach längerem Verweilen.—[10] **advantages**, Vorzüge.—[11] **It depends solely on whether**, Es kommt einzig darauf an, ob; cf. p. 179, n. 3. A substantive clause, also a dep. inf., must in Ger. often be anticipated by a compound of da; the da is then not to be transl. unless special emphasis is to be given by anticipating the dep. clause by means of *this* or *that*; cf. §§ 413. 1, *c*, 367. 6, *a*.—[12] **had set in**; observe that an intrans. compound of a trans. verb may take sein as aux.; so, too, a trans. verb used in intrans. meaning, as ziehen, in the sense of 'to go,' cf. further Ex. XXXVI c, n. 13.—[13] **answered**; see p. 179, n. 2.—[14] **begged**; use bitten.—[15] **In this way**; cf. § 377, auf, *b*, (4).—[16] **of coming**; use inf.—[17] **route**, Reiseplan, *travelling-plan*.—[18] **Mainz**; some prefer, as in the case of 'Leipzig,' to keep the Ger. form of the name, others call the city by the French name, *Mayence*; *Mentz*, an Eng. form, is seldom heard. When not otherwise specified proper names are understood to be identical in Ger. and Eng. **Cologne** = Köln, cf. p. 62, n. 7.—[19] **trip down the Rhine**, Rheinfahrt, the direction being indicated by the route.—[20] **at**, zu.—[21] **National Monument**, National-Denkmal; the so-called 'Germania', from the heroic female figure that crowns the monument; erected to commemorate the triumph over the French in the War of 1870–71. The **Niederwald** is an eminence 1080 ft. high overlooking the Rhine opposite Bingen.—[22] Use pres. indic.

EXERCISE XLI c.

1. The performance was just beginning when we arrived. 2. We have met[1] him several times on the street. 3. He informed me of[2] his plans, but I would not enter upon[3] a discussion of them. 4. At what time does the sun rise now? 5. Do you get up before sunrise? 6. The building of the Cologne cathedral was begun more than six centuries ago.[4] 7. It certainly looks very easy, and I cannot comprehend wherein the difficulty consists. 8. It never occurred to me that they could be distinguished in this

simple way. 9. He got up very early[5] this morning and went out into the garden. So far as[6] I know, he is out there yet; I will call him. 10. This physician recommends a sea-voyage, others have recommended a sojourn in the mountains; what am I to do? 11. I cannot use this edition of the grammar, for it does not contain the exercises that we have to translate from English into German.[7] 12. Goethe was born[8] in Frankfurt-on-the-Main[9] and grew up in that city. 13. He was brought up somewhat strictly and was instructed partly[10] by his father, partly by private teachers. 14. Luther translated the Bible[11] into German. 15. I have copied the letter, but have not signed it. 16. Pardon me,[12] I thought you had finished it. 17. Do you know[13] the place in[14] Shakespeare where these words occur? 18. I have read them repeatedly,[15] but have forgotten in what connection they are used.

Vocabulary.

ab'ſchreiben, *v. s.*, copy.
Auf'gang, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), rising; Sonnenaufgang, sunrise.
auf'gehen, *v. s. irr.* (*aux.* ſein), go up, rise.
auf'ſtehen, *v. s. irr.* (*aux.* ſein), get up, rise.
auf'wachſen, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein), grow up.
Aus'gabe, *f. w.*, edition.
aus'ſehen, *v. s.*, look, appear.
Bau, *m. s. 2*, building.
begegnen, *v. w.* (*aux.* ſein, *dat.*), meet.
begreifen, *v. s.*, comprehend.
Beſprechung, *f. w.*, discussion.
draußen, *adv.*, out there, outside.
ein'fallen, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein), come into one's head, occur to (*dat. of person*).
ein'laſſen, *v. s.*, *with* ſich, enter upon, go into (auf).
empfehlen, *v. s.*, recommend.
erziehen, *v. s.*, bring up, educate.
geboren, *ppl.*, born.
hinaus'gehen, *v. s. irr.* (*aux.* ſein), go out (there).
mit'teilen, *v. w.*, impart, tell, inform of.
rufen, *v. s.* (rief, gerufen), call, summon.

Schwierigkeit, *f. w.*, difficulty.
Stelle, *f. w.*, place.
unterrich'ten, *v. w.*, instruct, teach.
unterschei'den, *v. s.*, distinguish.
unterschrei'ben, *v. s.*, sign.
verzeihen, *v. s.* (verzieh, verziehen), pardon.
vor'kommen, *v. s.* (*aux.* sein), occur.
Zusam'menhang, *m. s.* (*no pl.*), connection.

NOTES.—[1] **met**; observe that begegnen governs the dat.; cf. § 257. 1. —[2] **informed me of**, teilte mir . . . mit.—[3] **upon**, auf with acc.—[4] **ago**, vor, preceding 'more'.—[5] **very early** follows 'this morning' in Ger.; on the general principle that the more significant adjunct comes last, the particular should follow the general; cf. §§ 422, 424.—[6] **So far as**, So viel; als being omitted. Note that such a phrase is followed by dep. order; cf. p. 156, n. 11.—[7] **from . . . German**, aus dem Englischen ins Deutsche; cf. § 290. 1.—[8] **was born**, wurde, rather than war, geboren, although the latter is frequently met; cf. § 344. 2.—[9] **on-the-Main**, am Main; so designated to distinguish it from Frankfurt an der Oder.—[10] **partly**, teils, which is properly an adv. gen.; cf. § 251. 3.—[11] **Bible**, Bibel, *f.*—[12] **Pardon me**, Verzeihen Sie; mir may be omitted unless a direct object follows.—[13] **know**, wissen.—[14] **place in**, Stelle bei, cf. § 377, bei (2).—[15] **repeatedly**, wiederholt; the ppl. adj. being used adv., as often; cf. §§ 368. 1, 369. 1.

EXERCISE XLII a.[1]

[Cf. Reading Lesson, p. 182.]

1. A poor cobbler wanted to get[2] a physician for his wife, who had been taken very[3] sick. 2. As he had not a penny, with which to pay the physician's fee, he was in sore[4] distress. 3. After he had considered the matter for a time, he hit upon the following plan. 4. Opposite[5] him lived a physician, who was considered[6] very skillful and who could, therefore, demand large fees. 5. To him the cobbler went, explained his wife's illness and requested him to visit her at once. 6. As[7] he had expected, the physician asked whether he had[8] anything to pay him, but did not demand his fee in advance.[9] 7. The cobbler answered that[10] he fortunately had twenty thalers which he had saved up for[11] such an emergency. 8. This was, of

course, untrue,[12] but the poor man thought it was a question of saving[13] his wife's life. 9. He told the physician it was all that he possessed in the world, but that he would gladly offer it to him if he could only cure[14] his wife. 10. The doctor asked how it would be if he should not cure her, although he hoped[15] he would succeed in doing so.[16] 11. The cobbler replied that[17] if the doctor would only take charge of his wife, he would give him the money just the same whether he killed or cured[18] her. 12. The doctor said he was satisfied with that and would go over to (see) the sick woman at once. 13. In spite of his skillful treatment, however, the woman died a few days later. 14. Not long afterward[19] the physician asked for[20] his fee. 15. To[21] the cobbler's question, (as to) whether he had cured his wife, the doctor answered that he had unfortunately not been able to do so.[22] 16. To[23] the second question, (as to) whether he had killed her, the doctor of course also replied in the negative. 17. The cobbler said that according to[24] the agreement he clearly owed him[25] nothing. 18. The physician did not know how to reply to that,[26] so this was the end of the matter.[27]

VOCABULARY.

abſchließen, *v. s.*, close up.
an'bieten, *v. s.*, offer.
an'nehmen (ſich, *gen.*), *v. s.*, interest one's self in, take charge of.
auf'ſparen, *v. w.*, save up, [spare].
Behandlung, *f. w.*, treatment.
beſitzen, *v. s.*, possess.
bezahlen, *v. w.*, pay.
erkranken, *v. w.* (*aux.* ſein), sicken, be taken sick.
erlügen, *v. s.*, invent for deception, [-lie].
erwidern, *v. w.*, reply.
gegenüber, *prep.* (*dat.*), opposite.
gelten, *v. s.* (galt, gegolten), *impers.*, involve, be a question *or* matter of.
geſchickt, *adj.*, skillful.
gleichviel', *adv.*, no matter, just the same.
hinüber'gehen, *v. s. irr.* (*aux.* ſein), go over.

Honorar', *n. s. 2*, fee.
kurieren, *v. w.*, *cure.*
Not, *f. s. 2* ((*pl.* ö), **need,** distress.
Pfennig, *m. s. 2*, **penny.**
retten, *v. w.*, rescue, save, [rid].
schuldig, *adj.*, indebted; — sein, to owe.
Schuster, *m. s. 1*, cobbler.
Thaler, *m. s. 1*, thaler, dollar.
trotz, *prep.* (*gen. or dat.*), in spite of.
überle'gen, *v. w.*, ponder, consider.
um'bringen, *v. w. irr.*, kill.
verneinen, *v. w.*, answer in the negative.
versetzen, *v. w.*, answer.

NOTES.—[1] This exercise is based on the Reading Lesson, Ex. XLII. —[2] **get,** holen.—[3] **very,** schwer.—[4] **sore,** schwer.—[5] **opposite**; gegenüber usually follows the governed word; cf. § 377, § 217. 2.—[6] **was considered**; use the idiom halten für, cf. § 265. 3, *c.*—[7] **as,** wie; distinguish 'as,' *temporal,* = als (sometimes also da or wie); 'as,' *causal,* = da; and 'as,' *modal,* = wie; cf. § 381. 1.—[8] **whether he had,** ob er . . . habe; cf. p. 183, n. 4. Note the principle, and before expressing the *indirect* statement, always find out what the *direct* statement or question would be. Here, e.g., the question in direct form would be, 'Have you anything?' For details resp. mode and tense in dep. clauses, see §§ 360, 361.—[9] **in advance,** im vor'aus.—[10] **that** may be omitted in Ger. (as in Eng.), in which case *normal* order is used; cf. § 360, *a.*—[11] **for,** auf with acc.—[12] **untrue,** erlogen, i. e., *falsely invented.*—[13] **it was a question of saving,** es galt . . . zu retten; the indic. is permissible here, if the statement be regarded as a fact; cf. § 360. 1, 3.—[14] **if he could cure** is a part of the quoted statement and is to be treated the same as the dep. clause upon which it in turn depends; cf. § 360. 5. Observe that the sentence 'he would offer . . . if he could cure' is not a condition contrary to fact. The man said: 'I will offer . . . if you can cure.'—[15] **although he hoped** is a part of the indirect statement.—[16] **he would succeed in doing so,** es werde (or es möge) ihm gelingen.—[17] **that** is better omitted here; cf. n. 10. —[18] **killed, cured**; cf. n. 14.—[19] **afterward,** danach.—[20] **asked for**; use verlangen, *demand.*—[21] **To,** auf with acc.—[22] **to do so** should be expressed by es, as the object of können. Observe that the doctor's answer was expressed directly in the perf. tense.—[23] **To** is not to be transl., Frage being the direct object of verneinen.—[24] **according to,** nach; cf. § 217. 2.—[25] **him**; use dat.—[26] **did not know how to reply to that** = *what he should reply to that* (darauf).—[27] **so this . . . matter**; transl. *and thus the matter was closed up.*

EXERCISE XLII b.

1. What I have learned has turned my thoughts in a new direction. 2. This crime should be carefully[1] investigated and the guilty person[2] punished. 3. The meetings take place on the first Monday and third Thursday of every month. 4. He felt the truth of my words very keenly.[3] 5. Nevertheless he continued [with] a quarrel that he should have confessed to be wrong.[4] 6. Gunpowder was invented by a German monk by name of Schwarz. 7. According to[5] other accounts it is said to have been invented by Roger Bacon, an Englishman. 8. He undertook this matter quite alone and he has resolved to finish it[6] without asking[7] anyone for[8] help. 9. I propose that the citizens appoint a committee to investigate these rumors. 10. In the Middle Ages many European towns were surrounded by[9] walls. 11. The door is locked and the boxes lie inside. 12. It fortunately happened that the rain stopped just as we arrived. 13. My friend has fallen a prey to the evil[10] influences of bad company. 14. His punishment is, perhaps, nothing more than he deserves, but I must nevertheless pity him. 15. The child has torn so many leaves that the book is utterly ruined. 16. Count Waldersee was made commander-in-chief[11] of the allied[12] armies in China.

VOCABULARY.

Armee', *f. w., army.*
auf'hören, *v. w.*, stop, cease.
Ausschuß, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), committee.
bedauern, *v. w.*, pity.
bekennen, *v. w. irr.*, confess, acknowledge.
bestrafen, *v. w.*, punish.
Bürger, *m. s. 1*, citizen, [**burgher**].
Donnerstag, *m. s. 2*, **Thursday.**
drinnen, *adv.*, **therein**, inside.
Einfluß, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), influence.
empfinden, *v. s.*, feel, be sensible of.
entschließen (sich), *v. s.*, resolve, determine.
erfinden, *v. s.*, invent.

ernennen, *v. w. irr.*, appoint, **name.**
fort'fahren, *v. s.* (*aux.* haben), continue.
Graf, *m. w.*, count, [**-grave**].
Mauer, *f. w.*, wall [*mure*].
Mönch, *m. s. 2*, *monk.*
Montag, *m. s. 2*, **Monday.**
Richtung, *f. w.*, direction.
Schießpulver, *n. s. 1*, gun-*powder.*
statt'finden, *v. s.*, take place, [**stead-**].
Streit, *m. s. 2*, strife, conflict, quarrel.
trotzdem', *adv.*, in spite of that, nevertheless.
umge'ben, *v. s.*, surround.
unterneh'men, *v. s.*, undertake.
untersuch'en, *v. w.*, investigate.
verbündet, *ppl. adj.*, allied.
verderben, *v. s.* (verdarb, verdorben), spoil, ruin.
verfallen, *v. s.* (*aux.* sein), fall a prey to (*dat.*).
Versammlung, *f. w.*, meeting, assemblage.
verschließen, *v. s.*, lock.
vor'schlagen, *v. s.*, propose.
wenden, *v. w.* (*and w. irr.*, § 330), turn [**wend**].
zerreißen, *v. s.* (zerriß, zerrissen), tear.
zu'tragen (sich), *v. s.*, happen.

NOTES.—[1] **carefully,** genau.—[2] **the guilty person,** der Schuldige; cf. § 290. 2.—[3] **keenly,** lebhaft.—[4] **to be wrong,** für unrecht.—[5] **according to,** nach.—[6] **it,** dieselbe.—[7] **without asking,** ohne . . . zu bitten; cf. § 367. 6.—[8] **for,** um.—[9] **by,** mit.—[10] **evil,** böse.—[11] **was made commander-in-chief,** wurde zum Feldherrn (or Generalissimus, *generalissimo*) . . . ernannt (or gemacht); for the construction with zu cf. § 265. 2, *a.*—[12] **allied,** verbündet or alliiert'.

PREPOSITIONS.

EXERCISE XLII c.

1. We took[1] a long walk in the woods last week, a longer one, in fact,[2] than we wished to take, for we lost our way.[1] 2. During the whole night we walked about in the woods, through the bushes, over a little brook, seeking[3] in vain a path to the village. 3. Finally, shortly before sunrise, we heard voices calling[4] from the densest part of the forest. 4. We answered and hurried in the direction of[5] the voices. 5. There we found the innkeeper with whom we board,[6] and with him two friends who live

next door to[7] the inn. 6. They had been looking for us everywhere in the woods and had been very anxious on our account. 7 We ourselves were not at all frightened,[8] but we became fatigued and very hungry. 8. Fortunately for us it was a moonlight night and we had no fear of[9] swamps or wild animals. 9. I have written to[10] my cousin and invited her to go with me to the theater this evening. 10. I bought tickets some days ago, for without doing that[11] one cannot get good seats. 11. After he had taken off his coat, he sat down behind the stove and lighted his pipe. 12. To[12] fulfill the conditions, building[13] must begin within thirty days. 13. The Holy Roman Empire lasted about a thousand years. 14. Facts[14] often contradict appearances.[14] 15. Not only his enemies but also his friends say that he has sworn falsely. 16. As I was walking along the river I saw him coming toward me; I should gladly have avoided him, had it been possible. 17. The ship sank so quickly that they could do nothing but[15] call for help. 18. As the house burned down in the night, very few of the occupants escaped death. 19. After Arnold had tried to betray his country he fled [over] to the British,[16] by whom he was as cordially[17] despised as by his countrymen.

VOCABULARY.

an'ſtecken, *v. w.*, light, ignite.
aus'ziehen, *v. s.*, take off (a garment).
Bach, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), brook, [**beck**].
Bedingung, *f. w.*, condition.
beſtehen, *v. s.*, last, endure.
binnen, *prep.* (*dat.*), within.
Couſi'ne, *f. w.*, *cousin.*
eilen, *v. w.* (*aux.* ſein), hurry, hasten.
ein'laden, *v. s.* (lud, geladen), invite.
entgegen, *prep.* (*dat.*), toward, in the direction of.
entge'genkommen, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein), come toward *or* to meet.
entgehen, *v. s. irr.* (*aux.* ſein, *dat.*), escape.
erfüllen, *v. w.*, ful-fill.
Furcht, *f.* (*no pl.*), fear, [**fright**].

heilig, *adj.*, **holy.**
herum'gehen, *v. s. irr.* (*aux.* sein), walk about.
hinter, *prep.* (*dat. and acc.*), be-**hind.**
hinü'berfliehen, *v. s.* (floh, geflohen, *aux.* sein), **flee over.**
hungrig, *adj.*, **hungry.**
Landsmann, *m. s.* (*pl.* Landsleute), (fellow-)country-man.
längs, *prep.* (*gen.*), **a-long.**
mondhell, *adj.*, **moon**-light.
nie'derbrennen, *v. w. irr.* (brannte, gebrannt), **burn** down.
nie'dersetzen (sich), *v. w.*, sit down.
Pfeife, *f. w.*, *pipe.*
Reich, *n. s.* 2, empire, [**rich**].
römisch, *adj.*, Roman.
Schein, *m. s. 2*, appearance, [**shine**].
schreien, *v. s.* (schrie, geschrieen), call, scream.
schwören, *v. s.* (schwor, geschworen), **swear.**
sinken, *v. s.* (sank, gesunken, *aux.* sein), **sink.**
Sumpf, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), **swamp.**
Thatsache, *f. w.*, fact.
umge'hen, *v. s. irr.*, avoid, evade.
verachten, *v. w.*, despise.
verirren (sich), *v. w.*, lose one's way.
verraten, *v. s.*, betray.
widersprech'en, *v. s.* (*dat.*), contradict.
wild, *adj.*, **wild.**

NOTES.—[1] **took, lost our way**; use the perf.; but in the subsequent sentences of the narrative the pret. is the proper tense; cf. §§ 350, 351.—[2] **in fact**, eigentlich, before 'a longer one.'—[3] **seeking**, indem wir . . . suchten; while the pres. pple. is sometimes used as appositional predicate (cf. § 368. 2), a concomitant act is more often expressed by indem and the indic.; cf. § 381. 1, *e.*—[4] **heard calling**, hörten . . . rufen; cf. § 366. 2.—[5] **in the direction of**; entgegen regularly follows the governed word; cf. § 377, *s. v.*—[6] **board with**, Pension haben bei.—[7] **next door to**, neben.—[8] **were not at all frightened**, hatten gar keine Angst.—[9] **of**, vor with dat.; cf. § 377, vor, *a*, (2).—[10] **to**, an.—[11] **without doing that**, ohne das zu thun; cf. § 367. 6.—[12] **To**, Um . . . zu, *in order to.*—[13] **building**, der Bau.—[14] **Facts, appearances**; use the sing.—[15] **but**, als; **for**, um.—[16] **British**, Engländer.—[17] **as cordially**, ebenso herzlich.

VOCABULARIES.

EXPLANATIONS.

The following abbreviations are used in the notes and vocabularies:

acc. accusative.
adj. adjective.
adv. adverb, or adverbial conjunction.
art. article.
aux. auxiliary.
cf. compare.
comp. comparative.
conj. conjunction.
dat. dative.
def. definite.
dem. demonstrative.
Eng. English.
Ex. Exercise.
f. feminine noun.
fem. feminine.
Fr. French.
fut. future.
gen. genitive.
Ger. German.
impers. impersonal(ly).
imv. imperative.
indcl. indeclinable.
indef. indefinite.
ind(ic.) indicative.
inf. infinitive.
inter. interrogative.
interj. interjection.
intr(ans). intransitive.
irr. irregular.
Lat. Latin.
lit. literally.
m. masculine noun.
masc. masculine.
mx. mixed.
n. neuter noun.
neut., neuter.
nom. nominative.
num. numeral.
perf. perfect.
pers. person(al).
pl. plural.
plup. pluperfect.
poss. possessive.
ppl. participial.
pple. participle.
pres. present.
prep. preposition.
pret. preterite.
pron. pronoun.
rel. relative.
refl. reflexive.
s. strong.
sing. singular.
sub. subordinating.
subj. subjunctive.
subst. substantive(ly).
superl. superlative.
s. v. sub voce, under the word.
trans. transitive.
v. verb.
w. weak.

English words printed in heavy-faced type are cognate with the German vocabulary-word preceding. A hyphen shows that only a part of the English word is cognate with the German, or *vice versa*. Brackets enclose cognates which are obsolete, imaginary, or such as do not now translate the German word. An English word printed in italics is *borrowed* from the same source as the corresponding German word. For the principal parts of strong verbs see § 331.

References to *page and note* (e. g., p. 34, n. 5) and to *paragraph* (e. g., § 290, 2) are to the Grammar. References to *exercise and note* (e. g., Ex. XVIII e, n. 3) are to the Supplementary Exercises.

Abbildung, *f. w.*, picture, illustration.
Abend, *m. s. 2*, **even**-ing; —blatt, *m. s. 3*, evening paper; —essen, *n. s. 1*, evening meal, supper.
Abenteuer, *n. s. 1*, *adventure.*
aber, *conj.*, *adv.*, but, however.
abreisen, *v. w.* (*aux.* sein), depart, leave, [-rise].
abschließen, *v. s.*, close up.
abschreiben, *v. s.*, copy.
Abwesenheit, *f. w.*, absence.
ach, *interj.*, oh! ah!
Adresse *f. w.*, *address.*
Advokat', *m. w.*, lawyer, [*advocate*].
Affe, *m. w.*, **ape**, monkey.
ähnlich, *adj.* (*dat.*), similar (to).
Akt, *m. s. 2*, *act.*
all, *pron.*, *adj.*, **all**, every; **alles** (*used alone*), everything.
allein', *adj.*, *adv.*, **alone.**
allerdings', *adv.*, to be sure, [of **all things**].
allerlei', *adj.* (*indcl.*), **all** sorts of.
allerliebst', *adj.* (§ 294, 1, *a*), most charming *or* delightful.
als, *sub. conj.*, than, when, **as.**
also', *adv.*, so, then, accordingly, [**also**].
alt, *adj.*, **old.**
Altar', *m. s. 2* (*pl. also* ä), *altar.*
Alter, *n. s. 1*, age, old age.
Altertum, *n. s. 3* (§ 91), antiquity.
Amerika, *n. s.*, *America.*
Amerika'ner, *m. s. 1*, *American.*
amerika'nisch, *adj.*, *American.*
amüsieren (sich), *v. w.*, enjoy (*amuse*) one's self.
an, *prep.* (*dat. and acc.*), **on**, by, at, to.
anbieten, *v. s.*, offer.
Anblick, *m. s. 2*, view, sight.
ander, *adj.*, **other**, else.
anders, *adv.*, **other**-wise, differently.
anderthalb, *adj.*, one and a half (§ 118, 3, *b*).
Anfang, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), beginning; anfangs, in the beginning, at first (§ 251, 2).
anfangen, *v. s.*, begin.
Angelegenheit, *f. w.*, affair.
angenehm, *adj.*, pleasant, agreeable.
Angst, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* Ä), *anxiety*, apprehension, fear.
ängstigen (sich), *v. w.*, torment one's self, be anxious.
ankommen, *v. s.* (*aux.* sein), arrive.
annehmen, *v. s.*, take (on), assume, accept; sich — (*gen.*), interest one's self in, take charge of.
Ansicht, *f. w.*, view, opinion, [-sight]; —skarte, souvenir card.
anstatt, *prep.* (*gen.*), in-**stead** of.
anstecken, *v. w.*, light, ignite.
Antwort, *f. w.*, **answer.**
antworten, *v. w.* (*intr.*), **answer.**
Anzahl, *f.* (*no pl.*), number, quantity.
Anzug, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), suit (of clothes).
Apfel, *m. s. 1* (*pl.* Ä), **apple**; —schuß, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* -üsse), **apple**-**shot.**
April', *m. s. 2*, *April.*
Arbeit, *f. w.*, work, labor.
arbeiten, *v. w.*, work.
Arbeiter, *m. s. 1*, workingman.
ärgern (sich), *v. w.*, be vexed, angry.
arm, *adj.*, poor.
Arm, *m. s. 2*, **arm.**
Armee', *f. w.*, *army.*
Art, *f. w.*, kind, sort.
artig, *adj.*, good, well-behaved.
Arznei', *f. w.*, medicine.

Arzt, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* Ä), **physician.**
atmen, *v. w.*, breathe.
auch, *adv.*, also, too, [**eke**].
auf, *prep.* (*dat. and acc.*), on, upon; *adv.*, **up.**
Aufbruch, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), departure, start, [**up-break**].
aufeinander, *adv.*, **one after another.**
Aufenthalt, *m. s. 2*, stay, sojourn.
Aufgabe, *f. w.*, exercise.
Aufgang, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), rising, rise.
aufgehen, *v. s.* (*aux.* sein), **go up,** rise.
aufhalten (sich), *v. s.*, stay.
aufhören, *v. w.*, stop, cease.
aufrichtig, *adj.*, sincere, frank, candid, [**upright**].
Aufsatz, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), essay, composition.
aufsparen, *v. w.*, save up, [-**spare**].
aufstehen, *v. s.* (*aux.* sein), get up, rise.
aufwachsen, *v. s.* (*aux.* sein), grow up.
Aufzug, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), act (of a play), [**up-tug**, i. e., of the curtain].
Auge, *n. mx.*, **eye**; —**nblick**, *m. s. 2*, moment, instant; —**nkrankheit**, *f. w.*, —**nleiden**, *n. s. 1*, malady of the eyes; —**nschein**, *m. s. 2*, view, [**eye-shine**].
August', *m. s. 2*, *August.*
aus, *prep.* (*dat.*), **out** of, from.
Ausdruck, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), expression.
aus`einan'dersetzen, *v. w.*, explain.
Ausflug, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), excursion, [**out-fly-ing**].
Ausgabe, *f. w.*, edition.
ausländisch, *adj.*, foreign, [**outlandish**].
ausruhen (sich), *v. w.*, rest one's self.
Ausschuß, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* -üsse), committee.
aussehen, *v. s.*, look, appear.
außer, *prep.* (*dat.*), except, **outside** of, [**outer**]; äußerst, *adv.*, exceedingly, extremely.
außerdem', *adv.*, besides.
Aussicht, *f. w.*, view, prospect, [**out-sight**].
Aussprache, *f. w.*, pronunciation.
aussprechen, *v. s.*, express, pronounce.
Ausstellung, *f. w.*, exposition.
auswendig, *adv.*, by heart.
ausziehen, *v. s.*, take off (a garment).
Autor, *m. mx.*, *author.*

Bach, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), brook, [**beck**].
Bad, *n. s. 3*, **bath.**
Bahnhof, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ö), station, depot.
bald, *adv.*, soon, [**bold**].
Ball, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), **ball.**
Band, *n. s. 2–3* (§ 90, 1), **band, bond,** ribbon.
bang(e), *adv.*, anxiously; — **machen**, *with dat. of pers.*, to trouble.
Bank, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), **bench.**
Bart, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), **beard.**
Bau, *m. s. 2* (§ 275, 2, *a*), building.
bauen, *v. w.*, build.
Bauer, *m. mx.*, peasant, [**boor**].
Baum, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* äu), tree, [**beam**].
beantworten, *v. w.* (*tr.*), -**answer.**
bedauern, *v. w.*, pity.
bedeuten, *v. w.*, signify, mean; **bedeutend**, *ppl. adj.*, significant; *as adv.*, notably.
Bedienung, *f. w.*, service.
Bedingung, *f. w.*, condition.
Bedürfnis, *n. s. 2*, need, necessity.
beeilen (sich), *v. w.*, hurry.
befehlen, *v. s.*, command, order.
befinden (sich), **find** (one's self), 'do'.
begegnen, *v. w.* (*aux.* sein, *dat.*), meet.
begehen, *v. s.*, commit.
begierig, *adj.*, eager.
beginnen, *v. s.*, **begin.**
begleiten, *v. w.*, accompany, [-**lead**].
begreifen, *v. s.*, comprehend, [-**gripe**].
begreiflich, *adj.*, comprehensible, [-**gripe-**].
Begriff, *m. s. 2*, idea, conception, [-**grip**].
behalten, *v. s.*, keep, retain, [-**hold**].

Behandlung, *f. w.*, treatment, [-handling].
behaupten, *v. w.*, assert.
behilflich, *adj.*, help-ful.
bei, *prep.* (*dat.*), by, at, with, at the house of.
beide, *pron.*, *adj.*, both, two (§ 148).
beina'he, *adv.*, almost, [-nigh].
Beispiel, *n. s. 2*, example, [-spell].
beißen, *v. s.*, bite.
bekannt, *adj.*, known; *as noun*, acquaintance (§ 290, 2).
Bekanntschaft, *f. w.*, acquaintance.
bekennen, *v. w. irr.* (§ 330), acknowledge, confess.
bekommen, *v. s.*, get, obtain, receive.
belohnen, *v. w.*, reward, repay.
bemerken, *v. w.*, notice, re-mark.
benutzen, *v. w.*, employ, use.
bequem, *adj.*, comfortable [quem = come].
bereit, *adj.*, -ready, prepared.
bereuen, *v. w.*, regret, -rue.
Berg, *m. s. 2*, mountain, [barrow].
Bericht, *m. s. 2*, report, information.
berühmt, *adj.*, famous.
beschäftigt, *ppl.*, busied, occupied, busy.
beschreiben, *v. s.*, describe, [-shrive, *-scribe*].
Beschreibung, *f. w.*, description.
besehen, *v. s.*, look at, examine, [be-see].
besetzen, *v. w.*, occupy, fill, [beset].
besitzen, *v. s.*, possess.
besonder, *adj.*, special; —s, *adv.*, especially, particularly.
Besorgnis, *f. s. 2*, care, anxiety, fear, solicitude, [-sorrow-].
Besprechung, *f. w.*, discussion.
bestehen, *v. s. irr.* (§ 185), last, endure; consist (of, aus; in, in); insist (upon, auf, *dat.*).
besteigen, *v. s.* (*tr.*), climb.
bestimmen, *v. w.*, destine, intend.
bestrafen, *v. w.*, punish.
Besuch, *m. s. 2*, visit, [-seek].
besuchen, *v. w.*, visit, attend, [-seek, beseech].
beträchtlich, *adj.*, considerable.
betragen, *v. s.*, amount to.
Betragen, *n. s.* (*no pl.*), conduct, behavior.
Betreff, *m. s.* (*no pl.*), reference, regard; in betreff (*with gen.*), in regard to, in the matter of.
betreffen, *v. s.*, concern; was . . . betrifft, as far as . . . is concerned, as for . . .
Bett, *n. mx.* (§ 280, 1), bed.
Bettler, *m. s. 1*, beggar.
Beutel, *m. s. 1*, purse.
Beweis, *m. s. 2*, proof, [-wise].
beweisen, *v. s.*, prove, [-wise].
Bewohner, *m. s. 1*, inhabitant, occupant.
bezahlen, *v. w.*, pay.
Bezug, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), reference, regard.
Bibel, *f. w.*, *bible*.
Bibliothek', *f. w.*, library.
biegen, *v. s.*, bend, [bow].
bieten, *v. s.*, offer, bid.
Bild, *n. s. 3*, picture.
bilden, *v. w.*, form, fashion; cultivate, refine.
Bilderbuch, *n. s. 3*, picture-book.
Billet', *n. s. 2* (*pl.* -tte), ticket.
billig, *adj.*, cheap, moderate.
billigen, *v. w.*, approve.
binden, *v. s.*, bind.
binnen, *prep.* (*dat.*), within.
bis, *prep.* (*acc.*), up to, until; — an, clear to, as far as; — zu, until; *sub. conj.*, until.
bißchen, ein, a little, [bit-].
biswei'len, *adv.*, at times.
Bitte, *f. w.*, request, [bid-].
bitten, *v. s.* ask, request, [bid]; (ich) bitte, please.
blasen, *v. s.*, blow, [cf. blast].
Blatt, *n. s. 3*, leaf, [blade].
blau, *adj.*, blue.
bleiben, *v. s.* (*aux.* sein), remain, stay, [-leave].
Bleistift, *m. s. 2*, lead-pencil.
blenden, *v. w.*, blind, dazzle, [blend].
Blick, *m. s. 2*, glance, look.
Blitz, *m. s. 2*, flash, lightning.
bloß, *adj.*, mere; *adv.*, merely, only.
Blume, *f. w.*, flower, [bloom].
Blut, *n. s.* (*no pl.*), blood.

blutig, *adj.*, **bloody**, fierce.
Boden, *m. s. 1* (*pl.* ö), ground, floor, [**bottom**].
böse, *adj.*, bad, ill, evil.
Bote, *m. w.*, messenger.
brauchen, *v. w.*, need, [**brook**].
braun, *adj.*, **brown**.
brechen, *v. s.*, **break**.
breit, *adj.*, **broad**, wide.
Breite, *f. w.*, breadth, [**bread-th**].
Brief, *m. s. 2*, letter, [*brief*]; —träger, *m. s. 1*, letter-carrier, postman.
bringen, *v. w. irr.* (§ 330), **bring**.
Brot, *n. s. 2*, **bread**.
Brücke, *f. w.*, **bridge**.
Bruder, *m. s. 1* (*pl.* ü), **brother**.
Brunnen, *m. s. 1*, well, spring, [**bourn, burn**].
Buch, *n. s. 3*, **book**; —handel, *m. s. 1*, book trade; —handlung, *f. w.*, book-store.
Bücherschrank, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), book-case.
Bühne, *f. w.*, stage (of theater).
Burg, *f. w.*, castle, stronghold, [**borough, bury**].
Bürger, *m. s. 1*, citizen, [**burgher**].
Busch, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), **bush**.
Butter, *f.* (*no pl.*), *butter;* —brot, *n. s.*, bread and butter.

Cent, *m. s.* (*pl.* -s), *cent.*
central', *adj.*, *central.*
Charak'ter, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* -te're), *character.*
Chor, *n. s. 2* (*pl.* ö), *choir.*
Cousi'ne, *f. w.*, *cousin* (*fem. only*).

da, *adv.*, **there**; *sub. coni.*, as, since.
dabei', *adv.*, in connection with that, [**there-by**].
Dach, *n. s. 3*, roof, [**thatch**].
dafür', *adv.*, for that, [**there-for**].
dage'gen, *adv.*, against it, on the other hand.
daher', *adv.*, therefore.
Dame, *f. w.*, lady, *dame.*
damit', *adv.*, therewith, with that, with it; *sub. conj.*, in order that.
Dampfer, *m. s. 1*, steamer, (steam-) boat.
dane'ben, *adv.*, besides.
Dank, *m. s.* (*no pl.*), **thanks**.
dankbar, *adj.*, **thank**-ful, grateful.
Dankbarkeit, *f.* (*no pl.*), **thank**-fulness, gratitude.
danken, *v. w.* (*dat.*), **thank**.
dann, *adv.*, **then**.
daran', *adv.*, **thereon**, of that.
darauf', *adv.*, **thereup-on**.
darbieten, *v. s.*, offer.
darin', *adv.*, **therein**, in it.
darstellen, *v. w.*, represent.
darü'ber, *adv.*, about that, about it, [**thereover**].
darum', *adv.*, therefore.
darun'ter, *adv.*, under that, under it, among them, [**thereunder**].
das, *art.*, the; *dem.*, **that**; *rel.*, which, **that**; das sind, those are.
daß, *subj. coni.*, **that**.
dauern, *v. w.*, last, continue, [*dure*].
davon', *adv.*, of that, of it, from that, from it.
dazu', *adv.*, besides, withal, for that, [**thereto**].
deklamieren, *v. w.*, *declaim*, recite.
Demokrat', *m. w.*, *democrat.*
denken, *v. w. irr.* (§ 330), **think**.
Denkmal, *n. s. 2–3*, monument.
denn, *conj.*, for; *adv.*, **then**.
der, die, das, *art.*, the; *dem.*, **that**; *rel.*, who, which, that.
desto, *adv.*, so much the, the (*with compar.*).
deswegen, *adv.*, on that account, therefore.
deuten (auf, *acc.*), *v. w.*, point (to).
deutlich, *adj.*, plain, distinct; *as adv.*, plainly, distinctly.
Deutsch, *n.* (*indcl.*), German, [**Dutch**, cf. § 1, 1]; **deutsch**, *adj.*, German.
Deutschland, *n.*, Germany.
Deze'mber, *m. s. 1*, *December.*
dicht, *adj.*, close, dense, thick, [**tight**].
Dichter, *m. s. 1*, poet.
Dichtung, *f. w.*, poetry.
dick, *adj.*, **thick**.
Dieb, *m. s. 2*, **thief**.
Diebin, *f. w.*, (female) **thief**.
Diener, *m. s. 1*, servant.
Dienst, *m. s. 2*, service; —mädchen, *n. s. 1*, servant-girl.
Dienstag, *m, s. 2*, Tuesday.
dies, *pron.* (*dem.*), **this**.

diesmal, *adv.*, this time, [-mole].
Ding, *n. s. 2*, thing.
Direk'tor, *m. mx.* (§ 98), *director.*
doch, *adv.*, yet, still, though, surely, really.
Doktor, *m. mx.* (§ 98), *doctor;* —titel, *m. s. 1*, doctor's *title.*
Dollar, *m. s.* (*pl.* -s), dollar.
Dom, *m. s. 2*, cathedral, *dome.*
Donnerstag, *m. s. 2*, Thursday.
Dorf, *n. s. 3*, village, [thorp, p. 34, n. 3]; —bewohner, *m. s. 1*, villager; —brunnen, *m. s. 1*, village-well.
Dörfchen, *n. s. 1*, little village.
dort, *adv.*, yonder, there.
Drama, *n. mx.*, *drama.*
drama'tisch, *adj.*, *dramatic.*
draußen, *adv.*, outside (dr for dar, außen from aus).
drei, *num.*, three.
dreimal, *adv.*, three times, [-mole].
drinnen, *adv.*, therein, inside.
droben, *adv.*, up there.
drüben, *adv.*, over yonder, over there.
du, *pron.*, thou, you (§ 301).
dumm, *adj.*, stupid, [dumb].
dunkel, *adj.*, dark.
durch, *prep.* (*acc.*), through, by.
Durchschnitt, *m. s. 2*, average, [through-cut].
dürfen, *v. w.* (§ 189), be permitted (§ 191, 1).
Dutzend, *n. s. 2*, *dozen.*

eben, *adv.*, even, just; —so . . . als, just as . . . as.
Ebene, *f. w.*, plain, [even].
edel, *adj.*, noble, [Ethel].
Edelmann, *m. s. 3* (§ 238, 2, *a*), nobleman.
ehe, *sub. conj.*, before.
Ehre, *f. w.*, honor.
ehren, *v. w.*, honor.
ehrlich, *adj.*, honorable.
Ei, *n. s. 3*, egg.
Eifer, *m. s.* (*no pl.*), zeal.
eigen, *adj.*, own.
ei'gentlich, *adj.*, real, actual; *as adv.*, really, properly, anyway.
Eigentum, *n. s. 3*, property, [own-dom].
Eigentümer, *m. s. 1*, own-er.
Eile, *f.* (*no pl.*), haste.
eilen, *v. w.* (*aux.* sein), hurry, hasten.
ein, *art.*, a, an; *num.*, one; *pron.*, cf. § 116, 1, § 149.
einan'der, *pron.* (*indcl.*), each other, one another.
Eindruck, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), impression.
einfach, *adj.*, simple.
einfallen, *v. s.* (*aux.* sein), come into one's head, occur to (*dat. of pers.*).
Einfluß, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), influence.
einige, *pron. adj.*, some.
Einkauf, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* äu), purchase; Einkäufe machen, to shop.
einladen, *v. s.*, invite.
Einladung, *f. w.*, invitation.
einlassen, *v. s. with* sich, enter upon, go into, (auf, *acc.*).
ein'mal, *adv.*, once; einmal', one time (*indef.*), even, just, pray.
einschränken, *v. w.*, limit.
Einsicht, *f. w.*, insight.
einst, *adv.*, once, one day, some time.
Eintritt, *m. s.* (*no pl.*), admission, entrance, [-tread]; —sbillet, ticket of admission.
einzig, *adj.*, single, only, [one-ly]; *as adv.*, solely.
Eisen, *n. s. 1*, iron; —bahn, railway, railroad, [iron-way].
elend, *adj.*, wretched, miserable.
Eltern, *pl. only*, parents, [elders].
empfehlen, *v. s.*, recommend.
empfinden, *v. s.*, feel, be sensible of.
Ende, *n. mx.* (*gen.* -s), end.
endlich, *adv.*, finally, at last, [end-].
eng, *adj.*, narrow.
Engländer, *m. s. 1*, Englishman.
englisch, *adj.*, English.
Entdeckung, *f. w.*, discovery, [-thatch-].
entfernt, *adv.*, distant, far away, (from fern, far).
entgegen, *prep.* (*dat.*, *follows governed word*), toward, in the direction of.
entgegenkommen, *v. s.* (*aux.* sein), come toward, come to meet.

entgehen (*aux.* sein), *v. s.* (*dat.*), escape.
enthalten, *v. s.*, contain, [-**hold**].
entscheiden, *v. s.*, decide.
entschließen (sich), *v. s.*, resolve, determine.
Enttäuschung, *f. w.*, disappointment.
entwerfen, *v. s.*, outline, plan.
er, *pron.*, he.
Erde, *f. w.*, **earth**.
erfahren, *v. s.*, ascertain, learn, [-**fare**].
Erfahrung, *f. w.*, experience, [-**faring**].
erfinden, *v. s.*, invent, [-**find**].
Erfindung, *f. w.*, invention, [-**finding**].
erfüllen, *v. w.*, ful-**fill**.
ergötzen (sich), *v. w.*, delight in, take pleasure in (an, *dat.*).
erhalten, *v. s.*, keep, preserve; receive, [-**hold**].
erinnern, *v. w.*, remind; — sich (*with gen.*), remember.
erkälten (sich), *v. w.*, take **cold**.
Erkältung, *f. w.*, **cold**.
erklären, *v. w.*, explain, make *clear*.
Erklärung, *f. w.*, explanation.
erkranken, *v. w.*, sicken, be taken sick.
erlauben, *v. w.*, allow, permit.
erlügen, *v. s.*, invent for deception, [-**lie**].
ermüden, *v. w.*, tire, fatigue.
ernennen, *v. w. irr.* (§ 330), appoint, -**name**.
erreichen, *v. w.*, -**reach**, come to.
erschöpft, *ppl.*, exhausted, worn-out.
erst, *adj.*, first, [**erst**]; *as adv.*, first, not until.
Erstaunen, *n. s.* (*no pl.*), astonishment.
erstaunt, *ppl.*, astonished.
erwachen, *v. w.* (*intr.*), a-**wake**.
erwarten, *v. w.*, expect, [-**ward**].
erwecken, *v. w.* (*tr.*), a-**waken**.
erwidern, *v. w.*, reply, [wider = with].
erzählen, *v. w.*, relate, -**tell**.
Erzählung, *f. w.*, story, narrative, -**tale**.
erziehen, *v. s.*, bring up, educate.
es, *pron.*, it, there (§ 303).
essen, *v. s.*, **eat**.
etlich, *pron.*, *adj.*, some.
etwa, *adv.*, about, approximately.
etwas, *pron.* (*indef.*), something, anything; *as adv.*, somewhat.
euer, *pron.* (*poss.*), **your**.
Euro'pa, *n.*, *Europe*.
ewig, *adj.*, everlasting, eternal, [aye-].
Exa'men, *n. s.* (*pl.* -a'mina), *examination*.

fähig, *adj.*, capable (of = *gen.*), fit, suited (for, zu).
fahren, *v. s.* (*aux.* sein), travel, go, [**fare**].
Fahrrad, *n. s. 3*, bicycle, [**fare**-; Rad = wheel].
Fahrt, *f. w.*, journey, trip.
Fall, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), case, [**fall**].
fallen, *v. s.* (*aux.* sein), **fall**.
falsch, *adj.*, *false*, wrong; —er Name, assumed name.
Fami'lie, *f. w.*, *family*; —nbild, *n. s. 3*, family portrait; —nleben, *n. s. 1*, family life.
fassen, *v. w.*, grasp, seize.
fast, *adv.*, almost, nearly.
faul, *adj.*, lazy, idle, [**foul**].
Faulheit, *f.* (*no pl.*), laziness, idleness.
Februar', *m. s. 2*, *February*.
fechten, *v. s.*, **fight**.
Feder, *f. w.*, pen, **feather**.
fehlen, *v. w.*, *fail*, be lacking, missing; was fehlt (*with dat. of pers.*)—what is the matter (with)?
Fehler, *m. s. 1*, mistake, [*fail*-].
feiern, *v. w.*, celebrate.
Feiertag, *m. s. 2*, holiday.
Feind, *m. s. 2*, enemy, [**fiend**].
feind, *adj.*, hostile (to = *dat.*).
Feld, *n. s. 3*, **field**; —herr, *m. w.*, (§ 94, 1), commander-in-chief.
Felsen, *m. s. 1* (§ 279, 2, *a*), rock.
Fenster, *n. s. 1*, window.
Ferien, *pl. only*, vacation.
Ferne, *f. w.*, distance, [**far**-].
fertig, *adj.*, ready, finished; — mit, through with.
Fertigkeit, *f. w.*, skill, proficiency.
fest, firm, strong; *as adv.*, firmly, fast.

Fest, *n. s. 2*, festival, **feast.**
Feuer, *n. s. 1*, **fire.**
Fieber, *n. s. 1*, *fever.*
finden, *v. s.*, **find**; — sich, find one's self, be.
Finger, *m. s. 1*, **finger.**
finster, *adj.*, dark.
Fleisch, *n. s.* (*no pl.*), meat, **flesh.**
Fleiß, *m. s.* (*no pl.*), industry.
fleißig, *adj.*, industrious.
fließen (*aux.* sein), *v. s.*, flow, [to **fleet**].
flüchtig, *adj.*, hasty, cursory; *as adv.*, hastily, hurriedly, [**flight-y**].
Flügel, *m. s. 1*, wing.
Fluß, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* -üsse), river.
Folge, *f. w.*, consequence, result.
folgen, *v. w.* (*aux.* sein, *dat.*), **follow.**
fort, *adv.*, away, **forth.**
fortan', *adv.*, hence-**forth**, hereafter.
fortfahren, *v. s.* (*intr.*, *aux.* haben), continue.
fortsetzen, *v. w.* (*tr.*), continue.
Fossil', *n. mx.* (*pl.* -ien), *fossil.*
Frage, *f. w.*, question.
fragen, *v. w.*, ask, inquire.
französisch, *adj.*, French.
Frau, *f. w.*, wife, lady, woman, Mrs.
Fräulein, *n. s. 1*, young lady, Miss.
frei, *adj.*, **free.**
freigebig, *adj.*, generous, liberal, [free-giv-ing].
Freiheit, *f. w.*, **free**-dom, liberty.
freilich, *adv.*, to be sure, [**freely**].
Freitag, *m. s. 2*, **Friday.**
fremd, *adj.*, strange, foreign; *as noun*, stranger (§ 290, 2).
Fremde, *f. w.* (*no pl.*), foreign land; in der —, abroad.
Freude, *f. w.*, joy, pleasure.
freuen, *v. w.*, rejoice; es freut mich, I am glad.
Freund, *m. s. 2*, **friend**; —in, *f. w.*, friend, lady friend.
freundlich, *adj.*, **friendly**, kind.
Freundschaft, *f. w.*, **friendship.**
Friede, *m. mx.* (*gen.* -ns), peace.
frisch, *adj.*, **fresh.**
froh, *adj.*, happy.
Frucht, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), *fruit.*
fruchtbar, *adj.*, fertile, *fruit*-ful.
früh, *adj.*, early; —er, formerly.
Frühling, *m. s. 2*, spring.
Frühstück, *n. s. 2*, breakfast, [-**stick**].
fühlen, *v. w.*, **feel.**
führen, *v. w.*, lead, conduct, carry on (as conversation, war, etc.).
Fülle, *f. w.* (*no pl.*), abundance, plenty, [full-ness].
fünf, *num.*, **five.**
für, *prep.* (*acc.*), **for.**
Furcht, *f.* (*no pl.*), fear, [**fright**].
fürchten, *v. w.*, fear.
furchtsam, *adj.*, timid, [**fright-some**].
Fuß, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* -üße), **foot**; —ball, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), **football**; —wanderung, *f. w.*, pedestrian tour, tramp.

Gabel, *f. w.*, fork.
Gallerie', *f. w.*, *gallery.*
ganz, *adj.*, all, whole (§ 109, 3); *adv.*, quite, entirely; im —en, on the whole; — und gar, altogether, utterly.
gar, *adv.*, quite, altogether; — nicht, not at all.
Garten, *m. s. 1* (*pl.* ä), **garden**, [**yard**]; —thor, *n. s. 2*, **garden**-gate, [-**door**].
Gärtner, *m. s. 1*, **gardener.**
Gast, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), **guest**; —haus, *n. s. 3*, inn.
Gebäude, *n. s. 1*, building.
geben, *v. s.*, **give**; es giebt (*with acc.*, § 340), there is, there are.
Gebirge, *n. s. 1*, mountains.
geboren, *ppl.*, -**born** (from gebären).
gebrauchen, *v. w.*, use.
Geburt, *f. w.*, -**birth**; —shaus, *n. s. 3*, **birth**-place; —stag, *m. s. 2*, **birthday.**
Gebüsch, *n. s. 2*, **bush**-es, thicket.
Gedanke, *m. mx.* (*gen.* -ns), thought, idea.
gedenken, *v. w. irr.* (§ 330), intend, purpose.
Gedicht, *n. s. 2*, poem.
Geduld, *f.* (*no pl.*), patience.
Gefahr, *f. w.*, danger, risk, [-**fear**].
gefährlich, *adj.*, dangerous, perilous.
gefallen, *v. s.* (*dat.*), please.
Gefallen, *m. mx.* (§ 279, 2), favor.

gefaßt, *ppl. adj.*, composed, calm.
Gefühl, *n. s. 2*, feel-ing.
gegen, *prep.* (*acc.*), against, towards, to [a-gain].
Gegend, *f. w.*, region, country.
Gegensatz, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), contrast.
Gegenteil, *n. s. 2* (§ 235, 3), contrary, reverse; im —, on the contrary.
gegenüber, *prep.* (*dat., usually follows governed word*), opposite.
Gegner, *m. s. 1*, opponent, adversary.
gehen, *v. s. irr.* (§ 185, *aux.* sein), go; das geht nicht, that won't do.
gehören, *v. w.* (*dat.*), belong to.
Geist, *m. s. 3*, intelligence, spirit, ghost.
geläufig, *adj.*, fluent, ready; *as adv.*, fluently; (from laufen).
gelb, *adj.*, yellow.
Geld, *n. s. 3*, money, [yield].
Gelegenheit, *f. w.*, opportunity.
gelehrt, *ppl. adj.*, learned; *as noun*, scholar (§ 290, 2).
gelingen, *v. s.* (*aux.* sein, *impers. with dat.*), succeed, be successful; es gelingt mir, I succeed.
gelten, *v. s.*, be at stake, involve, be a question *or* matter of, [yield].
gemein, *adj.*, common, ordinary, [-mean].
Gemüt, *n. s. 3*, feeling, soul, (from Mut, mood).
genau, *adj.*, exact, accurate, careful.
geneigt, *ppl. adj.*, inclined.
genießen, *v. s.*, enjoy.
genug, *adj.* (*indcl., follows noun*), enough.
genügen, *v. w.*, be enough, suffice.
gerade, *adv.*, exactly, just, [-rather].
gern, *adv.*, gladly, willingly; ich möchte gern, I should like; — haben, like, be fond of; — lesen, like to read, (cf. § 375, 1).
Gerücht, *n. s. 2*, rumor.
Geschäft, *n. s. 2*, business (from schaffen, *v. w.*, to do).
geschehen, *v. s.* (*aux.* sein, *3d pers. only*), happen; = *passive of* machen, thun, be done.
Geschenk, *n. s. 2*, present, (from *schenken*).
Geschichte, *f. w.*, story, history, (from geschehen).
geschichtlich, *adj.*, historical.
geschickt, *adj.*, skillful.
Geschmack, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä, *rare*), taste, [-smack].
Gesellschaft, *f. w.*, society, company.
Gesicht, *n. s. 3* (§ 276, *a*), face, countenance, -sight.
Gespenst, *n. s. 3*, ghost, spook.
Gespräch, *n. s. 2*, conversation, (from sprechen).
gestehen, *v. s. irr.* (§ 185), confess.
gestern, *adv.*, yester-day.
gesund, *adj.*, well, healthy, [-sound].
Gesundheit, *f. w.*, health, [soundhood].
gewähren, *v. w.*, afford, grant.
gewaltig, *adj.*, powerful.
gewinnen, *v. s.*, gain, -win.
gewiß, *adj.*, certain; *adv.*, certainly; to be sure, [-wit].
Gewitter, *n. s. 1*, thunder-storm, [-weather].
gewöhnen (sich), *v. w.*, accustom one's self (to, an, *acc.*).
gewöhnlich, *adj.*, usual, ordinary; *adv.*, usually.
gewohnt, *ppl. adj.*, accustomed.
gießen, *v. s.*, pour.
Gipfel, *m. s. 1*, peak, summit.
glänzen, *v. w.*, glitter, glisten, [glance].
Glas, *n. s. 3*, glass.
Glaube, *m. mx.* (*gen.* -ns), belief, faith, [be-lief].
glauben, *v. w.*, be-lieve (§ 257, 1, *a*).
gleich, *adj.*, -like, a-like; *adv.*, directly.
gleich'falls, *adv.*, like-wise.
gleichviel', *adv.*, no matter, just the same.
Glocke, *f. w.*, bell, [clock]
Glück, *n. s.* (*no pl.*), -luck, fortune; zum —, fortunately
glücklich, *adj.*, -lucky, fortunate, happy.
glücklicherweise, *adv.*, fortunately, [lucky-wise].
gnädig, *adj.*, gracious.
golden, *adj.*, golden, gold.
Goldstück, *n. s. 2*, gold-piece, [-stick].

graben, *v. s.*, dig, [**grave**].
Grad, *m. s. 2*, degree, *grade*.
Graf, *m. w.*, count, [-**grave** in margrave].
Grammat'ik, *f. w.*, *grammar*.
Gras, *n. s. 3*, **grass**.
grau, *adj.*, **gray**.
greifen, *v. s.*, grasp, seize, **grip**(e).
griechisch, *adj.*, *Greek*.
groß, *adj.*, **great**, large; (*of stature*) tall.
Großmutter, *f. s. 1* (*pl.* ü), grand-mother.
grün, *adj.*, **green**.
Grund, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), reason, **ground**, foundation.
gründlich, *adj.*, thorough, [**ground**-].
Gruß, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), **greet**-ing.
gut, *adj.*, **good**; *adv.*, well.
Güte, *f.* (*no pl.*), **good**-ness, kindness.
Gymnasium, *n. mx.*, *gymnasium*.

Haar, *n. s. 2*, **hair**.
haben, *v. w. irr.* (§ 171), **have**.
Hafen, *m. s. 1* (*pl.* ä), harbor, [**haven**].
halb, *adj.*, **half** (§ 109, 3).
Hals, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), neck, throat, [**halse**].
halten, *v. s.*, **hold**, consider (§ 265, 3, *c*); — von, think (much, little) of; Wort —, keep (one's) word.
Hand, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), **hand**.
Handel, *m. s.* (*no pl.*), trade, commerce, [**handle**].
handeln, *v. w.*, act, [**handle**]; es handelt sich um, it is a question of.
Handelsfreiheit, *f. w.*, free-trade.
Handlung, *f. w.*, shop, store, [**handling**].
Handschuh, *m. s. 2*, glove, [**hand**-shoe].
Hängematte, *f. w.*, hammock.
hangen, *v. s.*, **hang**.
häufig, *adj.*, frequent; *adv.*, often, [**heap**-].
Haupt, *n. s. 3*, **head**, chief (cf. § 276).
hauptsächlich, *adv.*, chiefly.
Hauptstadt, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), capital, [**head-stead**, *i. e.* chief city].
Haus, *n. s. 3*, **house**; —herr, *m. w.*, —wirt, *m. s. 2*, man-of-the-house, landlord; —lehrerin, *f. w.*, governess; nach —e, home (homeward); zu —e, at home.
Häuschen, *n. s. 1*, little house, cottage.
heftig, *adj.*, violent.
hegen, *v. w.*, cherish, [**hedge**].
heilig, *adj.*, **holy**, sacred.
Heimat, *f. w.*, home, native place *or* country, [**home**-].
Heirat, *f. w.*, marriage.
heiß, *adj.*, **hot**.
heißen, *v. s.*, be called, [be **hight**].
heiter, *adj.*, cheerful.
Held, *m. w.*, hero.
Heldin, *f. w.*, heroine.
helfen, *v. s.* (*dat.*), **help**; das hilft nichts, that avails nothing, does no good.
hell, *adj.*, bright, clear, light.
her, *adv.*, hither, along.
Herbst, *m. s. 2*, autumn, [**harvest**].
herein', *adv.*, in hither, in here (§ 210, 2).
hereinbrechen, *v. s.* (*intr.*, *aux.* sein), set in.
Herr, *m. w.* (§ 94, 1), gentleman, sir, Mr.
herrlich, *adj.*, glorious, splendid.
herumgehen, *v. s. irr.* (§ 185, *aux.* sein), walk about.
Herz, *n. mx.* (§ 97, 2, *a*), **heart**; —ensfreund, *m. s. 2*, bosom-friend.
herzlich, *adj.*, **heart**-y, sincere, cordial.
heulen, *v. w.*, **howl**.
heute, *adv.*, to-day; heutzutage, nowadays.
heutig, *adj.*, of to-day, to-day's.
Hexe, *f. w.*, witch, [**hag**].
hier, *adv.*, **here**.
Hilfe, *f.* (*no pl.*), **help**.
Himmel, *m. s. 1*, heaven. sky.
hinaus', *adv.*, **out** thither, out there (§ 210, 2).
hinausgehen, *v. s.* (*aux.* sein), **go** out (there).
hindern, *v. w.*, **hinder**, prevent.
Hindernis, *n. s. 2*, hindrance, difficulty, [**hinder-ness**].
Hinsicht, *f. w.*, respect, [-**sight**].
hinter, *prep.* (*dat. and acc.*), be-**hind**.
Hintergrund, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), **background**.

Hinterwäldler, *m. s. 1*, backwoodsman.
hinüberfliehen (*aux.* sein), *v. s.*, flee over.
hinübergehen, *v. s. irr.* (§ 185, *aux.* sein), go over.
histo'risch, *adj.*, *historical.*
hoch, *adj.*, high (§ 109, 1).
höchstens, *adv.*, at the most.
Hof, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ö), court; —leben, *n. s. 1*, court-life.
hoffen, *v. w.*, hope.
Hoffnung, *f. w.*, hope, [hoping].
höflich, *adj.*, polite.
Höflichkeit, *f. w.*, politeness.
Höhe, *f. w.*, height.
holen, *v. w.*, fetch, get, [hale].
Holz, *n. s. 3*, wood, forest, [holt].
Honorar', *n. s. 2*, fee.
hören, *v. w.*, hear.
hübsch, *adj.*, pretty.
Hügel, *m. s. 1*, hill.
Hund, *m. s. 2*, dog, [hound].
hundert, *num.*, hundred.
hungrig, *adj.*, hungry.
Hut, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), hat, [hood].
hüten (sich), *v. w.*, be on one's guard, [heed].

ich, *pron.*, I.
ihr, *poss. pron.*, her, their; Ihr, your.
immer, *adv.*, always.
in, *prep.* (*dat. and acc.*), in, into.
indem', *sub. conj.*, while, since.
indes'sen, *adv.*, meanwhile, however.
Inhalt, *m. s.* (*no pl.*), contents, [in-hold].
Insel, *f. w.*, island.
interessant', *adj.*, *interesting.*
Interes'se, *n. mx.* (*gen.* -s), *interest.*
irgend, *pron.* (*indcl.*), any, some (§ 152).
Irrtum, *m. s. 3*, error, [err-dom].
italie'nisch, *adj.*, *Italian.*

ja, *adv.*, yes; of course, you know (§ 380, 1, *d*).
Jäger, *m. s. 1*, hunter.
Jahr, *n. s. 2*, year; —esfest, *n. s. 2*, annual festival; —estag, *m. s. 2*, anniversary; —eszeit, *f. w.*, season.
Jahrhun'dert, *n. s. 2*, century.
Januar', *m. s. 2*, *January.*
jed-, *pron.*, every, each.
jedenfalls, *adv.* at any rate.
jedermann, *pron.* (*indcl.*), every one (§ 153).
jedoch, *adv.*, nevertheless, yet.
jemand, *pron.*, *indef.*, some one, any one (§ 154).
jen-, *dem. pron.*, that, [yon].
jetzt, *adv.*, now, [yet].
jetzig, *adj.*, present (from jetzt).
Jugend, *f.* (*no pl.*), youth.
Ju'li, *m. s.*, *July.*
jung, *adj.*, young.
Junge, *m. w.*, boy, lad.
Jungfrau, *f. w.*, maid.
Jüngling, *m. s. 2*, youth, young man.
Ju'ni, *m. s.*, *June.*

Kaffee, *m. s.* (*no pl.*), *coffee.*
Kahn, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), boat, rowboat.
Kaiser, *m. s. 1*, emperor, [*Cæsar*].
kalt, *adj.*, cold.
Kälte, *f. w.* (*no pl.*), cold.
Kamerad', *m. w.*, *comrade*, companion.
Kandidat', *m. w.*, *candidate.*
Kanzel, *f. w.*, pulpit, *chancel.*
Kapital', *n. s. 2* (*pl. also* -ien), *capital*, principal.
Kapitän', *m. s. 2*, *captain.*
Karte, *f. w.*, *card.*
Kasten, *m. s. 1*, box.
Kathedra'le, *f. w.*, *cathedral;* Kathedral'kirche, *f. w.*, cathedral -church.
Kauf, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* äu), purchase, [chap, cheap].
kaufen, *v. w.*, buy.
Kaufmann, *m. s. 3* (§ 238, 2, *a*), merchant, [chap-man].
kaum, *adv.*, scarcely, hardly.
kein, *adj.*, no, not a, none (§ 155).
keineswegs, *adv.*, by no means, in no way.
kennen, *v. w. irr.* (§ 330), know, be acquainted with, [ken].
Kenntnis, *f. s. 2*, knowledge.
Kerl, *m. s. 2*, fellow, [churl].
Kerlchen, *n. s. 1*, little fellow.
Kind, *n. s. 3*, child.
Kindheit, *f.* (*no pl.*), child-hood.

Kirche, *f. w.*, **church, [kirk].**
Kissen, *n. s. 1, cushion.*
klar, *adj., clear.*
Klasse, *f. w., class.*
Klavier', *n. s. 2,* piano, [*clavier*]; —stunde, *f. w.*, piano-lesson.
Kleid, *n. s, 3,* garment, dress; *pl.* clothes, [**cloth**].
Kleidung, *f. w.*, **clothing,** apparel; —ſtück, *n. s. 2,* article of clothing.
klein, *adj.*, small.
Kleinigkeit, *f. w.*, trifle, small matter.
Klima, *n. s.* (*pl.* -ta or -te), *climate.*
klimmen, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein), **climb.**
klingen, *v. s.*, sound, [**clink**].
klopfen, *v. w.*, knock.
Kloſter, *n. s. 1* (*pl.* ö), convent, *cloister.*
klug, *adj.*, clever, ingenious.
Klugheit, *f.* (*no pl.*), prudence, cleverness, shrewdness.
Knabe, *m. w.*, boy, [**knave**]; -nſchule, *f. w.*, boys'-*school.*
Koffer, *m. s. 1,* trunk, [*coffer*].
kommen, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein), **come.**
Komponiſt', *m. w., composer.*
König, *m. s. 2,* **king.**
Königin, *f. w.*, queen.
königlich, *adj.*, royal, **kingly.**
können, *v. w.* (§ 189), **can,** be able.
Konzert', *n. s. 2, concert.*
Kopf, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ö), head, [**cup**].
Kopfſchmerz, *m. mx.*, headache, [-smart].
Kopfweh, *n. s. 2,* headache, [-woe].
Koſt, *f. w.*, fare, board, [*cost*].
koſten, *v. w., cost.*
Koſten, *w.* (*pl. only*), *cost(s)*, expense.
Kraft, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), force, strength, [**craft**].
kräftig, *adj.*, strong, pithy, [**crafty**].
kraftvoll, *adj.*, powerful, [**craft-full**].
krank, *adj.*, sick, ill.
Krankheit, *f. w.*, sickness, illness, disease; —ſall, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), case of sickness.
Krieg, *m. s. 2,* war; —ſchiff, *n. s. 2,* war-**ship,** man-of-war.
Krone, *f. w., crown.*
Kronprinz, *m. w., crown-prince.*
Küche, *f. w., kitch*-en.
kühl, *adj.*, **cool.**
kümmern, *v. w.*, trouble, concern; — ſich, care (about, um).
künftig, *adj.*, coming, next, future.
Kunſt, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), art; —geſchmack, *m. s.*, artistic taste.
kurieren, *v. w., cure,* treat.
Kurſus, *m.* (*pl.* Kurſus *or* Kurſe), *course.*
kurz, *adj.*, short, [*curt*]; *as adv.* (*of time*), shortly.
kürzlich, *adv.*, lately, recently.
Kutſche, *f. w., coach.*

lachen, *v. w.*, **laugh.**
Laden, *m. s. 1* (*pl.* ä), store, shop.
Lage, *f. w.*, situation, location, position, [**lay**].
Land, *n. s. 2–3* (p. 46, n. 10), **land,** country; auf dem —e, in the country.
Landsmann, *m. s. 3* (*pl.* -leute, but see § 238, 2, *a*,) countryman, fellow-countryman.
lang, *adj.*, **long;** ſeit —em, for a long time (past).
lange, *adv.*, **long,** for a long time.
Länge, *f. w.* length, [**leng-th**].
längs, *prep.* (*gen.*), along.
langſam, *adj.*, slow; *as adv.*, slowly, [**long-some**].
längſt, *adv.*, long since.
langweilig, *adj.*, dull, tedious, [**long-while-y**].
laſſen, *v. s.*, **let,** cause; (etwas) thun —, have (something) done (§ 366, 1, *a*).
Latein', *n. s.* (§ 290, 1), *Latin.*
latei'niſch, *adj.*, Latin.
laufen, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein), run, [**leap**].
lauten, *v. w.*, purport, run.
lauter, *adv.*, exclusively, none but.
leben, *v. w.*, **live.**
Leben, *n. s. 1,* life, [**live**].
lebhaft, *adj.*, **live-ly;** *as adv.*, keenly.
legen, *v. w.*, **lay.**
Lehnſtuhl, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), easy-chair, [**lean-stool**].
Lehrbuch, *n. s. 3,* text-**book.**
Lehrer, *m. s. 1,* (man) teacher; —in, *f. w.*, woman teacher.
lehrreich, *adj.*, instructive, [**-rich**].

leicht, *adj.*, **light**, easy; *as adv.*, easily, readily.
leid, *adj.*, disagreeable; es thut mir —, I am sorry, [**loath**].
leiden, *v. s.*, suffer, [**loathe**].
Leiden, *n. s. 1*, suffering, trouble.
leider, *adv.*, unfortunately, alas!
leise, *adv.*, softly, in low tone.
Lektü're, *f. w.*, text for reading, [*lecture*].
lernen, *v. w.*, **learn.**
Lesebuch, *n. s. 3*, reading-**book**, reader.
lesen, *v. s.*, read.
Leser, *m. s. 1*, reader.
letzt, *adj.*, **last.**
Leute, *pl. only*, people.
Licht, *n. s. 3* (§ 276, *a*), **light.**
lieb, *adj.*, dear, [**lief**]; — haben, to like, be fond of, [**have lief**].
Liebe, *f. w.*, **love**; —szene, *f. w.*, love-scene; —sbrief, *m. s. 2*, love-letter.
lieben, *v. w.*, **love.**
liebenswürdig, *adj.*, lovely, [**love-worthy**].
lieber, *adv.*, rather, preferably, [**liefer**].
liebgewinnen, *v. s.*, grow fond of.
lieblich, *adj.*, **lovely**, sweet(-scented).
Lied, *n. s. 3*, song.
liegen, *v. s.*, **lie**, be situated.
link, *adj.*, left.
Liste, *f. w.*, *list.*
Lit'teratur', *f. w.*, *literature.*
loben, *v. w.*, praise, [**love**].
Loch, *n. s. 3*, hole, [**lock**].
Löffel, *m. s. 1*, spoon, [to **lap**].
lohnen (sich), *v. w.*, be worth while.
los, *adj.*, ridof, freefrom, **loose,-less.**
los'brechen, *v. s.* (*intr.*, *aux.* sein), **break loose**, burst.
Luft, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), air, breeze; —schloß, *n. s. 3*, castle-in-the-air.
lügen, *v. s.*, **lie**, tell a falsehood.
Lust, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), desire, [**lust**].
lustig, *adj.*, jolly, [**lusty**].
Lustspiel, *n. s. 2*, comedy.

machen, *v. w.*, **make**; sich auf den Weg —, set out, start.
Macht, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), power, *might.*
Mädchen, *n. s. 1*, girl, maiden, [maid-kin]; —schule, *f. w.*, girls'-school.
Magd, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), **maid**, maid-servant.
Mai, *m. s. 2*, *May.*
Mal, *n. s. 2–3* (§ 276, *a*), time, [**mole**]; ein'mal, once; ein paarmal, a few times.
Maler, *m. s. 1*, painter, artist.
Malerei', *f. w.*, painting.
man, *pron.*, *indef.*, one, they, people (§ 156), [**man**].
manch, *pron.*, *adj.*, **many, many** a; —mal, many a time, often.
Mann, *m. s. 3*, **man.**
mannigfaltig, *adj.*, **manifold.**
Mantel, *m. s. 1* (*pl.* ä), *mantle*, cloak.
Mark, *f. w.*, **mark.**
Mathematik', *f. w.* (*no pl.*), *mathematics.*
Mauer, *f. w.*, wall, [*mure*].
Medizin', *f. w.* (*no pl.*), *medicine.*
Meer, *n. s. 2*, sea, [**mere**].
mehr, *adj.*, more; *as adv.*, **more**; nicht —, no longer.
mehrere, *pron.*, *adj.*, several (§ 158), [**more-**].
Mehrheit, *f. w.*, majority, [**more-hood**, *i.e.* more-ness].
mehrmals, *adv.*, several times, frequently.
Meile, *f. w.*, *mile.*
meileuweit, *adv.*, for miles.
mein, *pron.*, *poss.*, my, **mine.**
meinen, *v. w.*, **mean.**
meistens, *adv.*, **most-ly.**
Meister, *m. s. 1*, *master.*
Menge, *f. w.*, mass, multitude, great number, [**many**].
Mensch, *m. w.*, man, mankind (from Mann).
menschlich, *adj.*, human.
merken, *v. w.*, notice, **mark.**
merkwürdig, *adj.*, remarkable, [**mark-worthy**].
Messe, *f. w.*, fair, *mass.*
Messer, *n. s. 1*, knife, [**meat**].
Metho'de, *f. w.*, *method.*
Miete, *f. w.*, hire, rent, [**meed**].
mild, *adj.*, **mild**, gentle.
mindestens, *adv.*, at least.
Mineral', *n. mx.* (*p.*. -ien), *mineral.*

Minu'te, *f. w.*, *minute.*
mit, *prep.* (*dat.*), with, [**mid** in mid-wife]; *adv.*, along.
Mittag, *m. s. 2*, **mid-day**, noon.
mitteilen, *v. w.*, impart, tell, inform of, [**-deal**].
mittel, *adj.*, **middle.**
Mittelalter, *n. s.* (*no pl.*), **Middle** Ages.
Mittelpunkt, *m. s. 2*, central *point*, center.
Mittelweg, *m. s. 2*, **middle way** *or* course.
Mittwoch, *m. s. 2*, Wednesday, [**mid-week**].
Mode, *f. w.*, fashion, *mode.*
mögen, *v. w.* (§ 189), **may**, wish, like (§ 191, 3).
möglich, *adj.*, possible (from mögen).
Monat, *m. s. 2*, **month**; —ſchrift, *f. w.*, **month**-ly (journal *or* magazine).
Mönch, *m. s. 2*, *monk.*
Mond, *m. s. 2*, **moon.**
mondhell, *adj.*, **moon**-light.
Montag, *m. s. 2*, **Monday.**
Morgen, *m. s. 1*, **morn**-ing; —blatt, *n. s. 3*, morning paper; —luft, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), morning air *or* breeze.
morgen, *adv.*, to-**morrow** (= Morgen, **morn**).
müde, *adj.*, tired.
Mühe, *f. w.*, pains, trouble; der — (*gen.*) wert, worth while.
Mund, *m. s. 2–3* (*pl. rare*), **mouth.**
Muſe'um, *n. mx.* (*pl.* -ſe'en), *museum.*
Muſik', *f. w.*, *music.*
müſſen, *v. w.* (§ 189), **must**, be obliged, be compelled, have to.
Mut, *m. s.* (*no pl.*), courage, **mood.**
Mutter, *f. s. 1* (*pl.* ü), **mother**; —ſprache, mother-tongue, native language.

nach, *prep.* (*dat.*), after, to, toward, according to, [**nigh**].
Nachbar, *m. mx.*, **neighbor.**
nachdem', *sub. conj.*, after.
nachher', *adv.*, afterward, subsequently.
Nachmittag, *m. s. 2*, afternoon, [**-mid-day**].
Nachricht, *f. w.*, report, news, tidings.
nächſt, *see under* nah.
Nacht, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), **night.**
nah, *adj.*, near, **nigh** (§ 114, 2); nächſt, *superl.*, nearest, **next.**
Nähe, *f. w.*, vicinity, [**nigh**-ness].
Name, *m. mx.* (*gen.* -ns), **name**; —nsvetter, *m. mx.*, namesake; Namens, by name.
nämlich, *adv.*, **namely**, that is to say.
Narr, *m. w.*, fool.
Naſe, *f. w.*, **nose.**
naß, *adj.*, wet, [**nas-ty**].
Nation', *f. w.*, *nation.*
Natur', *f. w.*, *nature;* —ſchönheit, *f. w.*, beauty of nature; —wiſſenſchaft, *f. w.*, natural science.
Natura'lien, *pl. only*, *natural* curiosities.
natür'lich, *adv.*, naturally, of course.
Nebel, *m. s. 1*, fog, mist.
neben, *prep.* (*dat. and acc.*), beside, close by, next to, alongside, along with.
Nebenfluß, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* -üſſe), tributary.
Neffe, *m. w.*, nephew.
nehmen, *v. s.*, take.
nein, *adv.*, no, [**none**].
nennen, *v. w. irr.* (§ 330), **name.**
Neſt, *n. s. 3*, **nest.**
nett, *adj.*, *neat*, nice.
neu, *adj.*, **new.**
Neugierde, *f. w.*, curiosity.
neugierig, *adj.*, curious (gierig, eager for).
neulich, *adv.*, lately, recently, [**newly**].
nicht, *adv.*, not, [**naught**].
nichts (§ 320, 2), *indcl.*, nothing.
nie, *adv.*, never.
nieder, *adv.*, down, [**nether**].
niederbrennen, *v. w. irr.* (§ 330), **burn** down.
niederſetzen (ſich), *v. w.*, sit down, [**-set**].
niedrig, *adj.*, low, [**nether-y**].
niemals, *adv.*, never.
niemand, *pron.*, *indef.*, no one, nobody (§ 160).
noch, *adv.*, yet, still; — nicht, not yet; *conj.*, nor.

nochmals, *adv.* again, once more.
Norden, *m. s. 1*, **north.**
Nordseite, *f. w.*, **north side.**
Nordlicht, *n. s. 3*, **North**-ern **Light**-s.
Not, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ö), **need**, distress.
Notfall, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), case of **need**, emergency.
nötig, *adj.*, **need**-ful, necessary.
Notiz', *f. w.*, note, *notice.*
Numero, *m.* (*indcl.*), at No.
nun, *adv.*, now, **well.**
nur, *adv.*, only, just.
Nuß, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), **nut.**

o, *interj.*, **O**, oh.
ob, *sub. conj.*, whether; als —, as if (§ 359, 3).
Obdach, *n. s. 3*, shelter, [-**thatch**].
oben, *adv.*, above, [ab-**ove**].
ober, *adj.*, upper.
obgleich', *sub. conj.*, although.
Obst, *n. s.* (*no pl.*), fruit.
obwohl', *sub. conj.*, although.
oder, *conj.*, or.
Ofen, *m. s. 1* (*pl.* Ö), stove, [**oven**].
offenbar, *adj.*, evident, plain; *as adv.*, evidently, clearly, [**open**-].
öffnen, *v. w.*, **open.**
oft, *adv.*, often, **oft.**
öfters, *adv.* (*comp. of* oft), often, frequently.
ohne, *prep.* (*acc.*), without.
Ohr, *n. mx.*, **ear.**
Onkel, *m. s. 1*, *uncle.*
Oper, *f. w.*, *opera.*
Ort, *m. s. 2–3* (§ 275, 2, *a*), place.
Ostern, *w.*, *pl. only*, **Easter.**

Paar, *n. s. 2*, *pair;* ein paar, a few.
Palast', *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), *palace.*
Papier', *n. s. 2*, *paper.*
Park, *m. s. 2* (*pl. also* Parks), *park.*
passen, *v. w.* (*dat.*), fit, suit.
Pastor, *m. mx.*, *pastor.*
Pau'se, *f. w.*, *pause*, recess.
Pension', *f. w.*, board, boarding-house; — haben bei, to board with.
Person', *f. w.*, *person.*
Pfad, *m. s. 2*, **path.**
Pfeife, *f. w.*, *pipe.*
Pfennig, *m. s. 2*, **penny.**
Pferd, *n. s. 2*, horse, [*palfrey*].
Pfingsten, *pl. only*, Whitsuntide, *Pentecost.*
Pflicht, *f. w.*, duty, [**plight**].
Philosophie', *f. w.*, *philosophy.*
Photographie', *f. w.*, *photograph.*
Plan, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), *plan.*
Platz, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), *place*, seat.
plaudern, *v. w.*, chat.
plötzlich, *adj.*, sudden; *adv.*, suddenly.
Politik', *f. w.* (*no pl.*), *politics.*
politisch, *adj.*, *political.*
Polizei', *f. w.*, *police.*
Polizist', *m. w.*, policeman.
Post, *f. w.*, mail, *post.*
prächtig, *adj.*, splendid.
Präsident', *m. w.*, *president;* —enwahl, *f. w.*, presidential election.
Preis, *m. s. 2*, *price.*
Presse, *f. w.*, *press.*
Preßfreiheit, *f. w.*, freedom of the press.
Prinz, *m. w.*, *prince.*
Profes'sor, *m. mx.*, *professor.*
Prolog', *m. s. 2*, *prologue.*
Prosa, *f.* (*no pl.*), *prose.*
Prozent', *n. s. 2*, per *cent.*
Prüfung, *f. w.*, trial, test, *proving.*
Pult, *m.* (*and n.*) *s. 2*, desk [*pulpit*].
Punkt, *m. s. 2*, *point.*

quälen (sich), *v. w.*, be tormented, be bored.
quer, *adj.*, across, [**queer**].

Rad, *n. s. 3*, wheel.
Rand, *m. s. 3*, edge, border, [**rand**].
rasch, *adj.*, fast, [**rash**].
Rat, *m. s.* (*no pl. in this sense*), advice, counsel.
raten, *v. s.*, guess, advise, [**read**, **rede**].
Räuber, *m. s. 1*, **robber**; Straßen—, footpad.
rauchen, *v. w.*, smoke, [**reek**].
rauh, *adj.*, **rough**, harsh.
rechnen, *v. w.*, **reckon**, count (on, auf, *acc.*).
recht, *adj.*, **right**, right-hand; *adv.* right, very.

Recht, *n. s. 2*, **right**; recht haben, to be right (*of persons only*).
Rede, *f. w.*, speech, address; —freiheit, *f. w.*, freedom of speech.
reden, *v. w.*, **talk**.
redlich, *adj.*, honest, candid.
Redlichkeit, *f.* (*no pl.*), honesty.
Reform', *f. w.*, *reform*.
Regel, *f. w.*, *rule*.
regelmäßig, *adj.*, *regul*-ar.
Regen, *m. s. 1*, **rain**; —schirm, *m. s. 2*, umbrella; —tag, *m. s. 2*, rainy day.
regnen, *v. w.*, **rain**.
reich, *adj.*, **rich**.
Reich, *n. s. 2*, empire, [**rich**].
reichen, *v. w.*, **reach**, hand.
reichlich, *adj.*, plentiful, abundant; *as adj.*, **richly**.
Reichtum, *m. s. 3*, **rich**-es.
reif, *adj.*, **ripe**, mature.
Reihe, *f. w.*, **row**.
Reise, *f. w.*, journey, trip, [**rise**]; —kamerad', *m. w.*, traveling companion (*comrade*); —plan, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), route.
reisen *v. w.* (*aux.* § 323, 1, *c*), travel, [**rise**]; der Reisende, *pres. ppl. as noun* (§ 290, 2), traveler.
reiten, *v. s.* (*aux.* sein), **ride**.
Reiter, *m. s. 1*, **rider**, horseman.
Reitpferd, *n. s. 2.*, saddle-horse.
Reiz, *m. s. 2*, charm.
reizend, *ppl. adj.*, charming.
Republik', *f. w.*, *republic*.
Republika'ner, *m. s. 1*, *republican*.
reservieren, *v. w.*, *reserve*.
retten, *v. w.*, rescue, save, [**rid**].
Reue, *f.* (*no pl.*), regret, repentance, [to **rue**].
Rhein, *m. s.*, Rhine; —fahrt, *f. w.*, trip, *or* sail, on the Rhine.
Rheumatismus, *m. s.* (*no pl.*), *rheumatism*.
richten, *v. w.*, judge, (from recht).
richtig, *adj.*, **right**, correct.
Richtung, *f. w.*, direction.
riechen, *v. s.*, smell, [**reek**].
Ring, *m. s. 2*, **ring**.
Ritter, *m. s. 1*, knight, [**rider**].
Rock, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ö), coat; (*of women's apparel*) skirt.
Rolle, *f. w.*, *rôle*, part.
Roman', *m. s. 2*, novel, *romance*.
römisch, *adj.*, Roman.
Rose, *f. w.*, *rose*.
rot, *adj.*, **red**.
Rückkehr, *f. w.*, return.
Rückreise, *f. w.*, return journey.
Rückweg, *m. s. 2*, return, **way** back.
rufen, *v. s.*, call, summon.
Ruhe, *f.* (*no pl.*), rest.
ruhen, *v. w.*, rest.
ruhig, *adj.*, quiet.

Saal, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* Säle), hall, (large) room; Konzert—, concert-hall.
Sache, *f. w.*, affair, thing, [**sake**].
Sage, *f. w.*, tradition, legend, story, [**say**].
sagen, *v. w.*, **say**, tell.
Salaman'der, *m. s. 1*, *salamander*.
Sammlung, *f. w.*, collection.
Samstag, *m. s. 2*, Saturday.
sanft, *adj.*, gentle, **soft**.
sauer, *adj.*, bitter, **sour**.
Scene, *f. w.*, *scene*.
Schade, *m. mx.* (*pl.* Schäden), injury, loss; das ist schade, that is a pity, [**scathe**].
schämen (sich), *v. w.*, be ashamed (of = *gen.*), [**shame**].
schändlich, *adj.*, shameful, disgraceful.
Schatten, *m. s. 1*, **shade**, **shadow**.
schätzen, *v. w.*, value, esteem.
schaukeln, *v. w.*, rock.
Schaukelpferd, *n. s. 2*, rocking-horse.
Schaukelstuhl, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), rocking-chair, [**stool**].
Schauplatz, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), scene, [**show**-*place*].
Schauspieler, *m. s. 1*, actor, [show-].
Schauspielerin, *f. w.*, actress.
Schein, *m. s. 2*, appearance(s), [**shine**].
scheinbar, *adj.*, seeming, apparent; *as adv.*, seemingly.
scheinen, *v. s.*, seem, **shine**.
Schelm, *m. s. 2*, rogue, scamp.
schenken, *v. w.*, present, give.
schicken, *v. w.*, send.

schießen, *v. s.*, **shoot.**
Schießpulver, *n. s. 1*, gunpowder, [**shoot**-*powder*].
Schiff, *n. s. 2*, **ship**; Kriegs—, war-ship, man-of-war.
Schinken, *m. s. 1*, ham.
Schlacht, *f. w.*, battle, [**slaughter**].
Schlaf, *m. s.* (*no pl.*), **sleep**; —zimmer, bedroom.
schlafen, *v. s.*, **sleep.**
schlagen, *v. s.*, strike, [**slay**].
schlecht, *adj.*, bad, poor, [**slight**].
schließen, *v. s.*, close, conclude, infer.
schlimm, *adj.*, bad, [**slim**].
Schlittschuh, *m. s. 2*, skate, [**slide-shoe**].
Schloß, *n. s. 3* (*pl.* =öſſer), castle, [**slot**].
Schluß, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* =üſſe), end, close.
Schlüſſel, *m. s. 1*, key.
schmeichelhaft, *adj.*, flattering.
schmeicheln, *v. w.* (*dat.*), flatter.
Schmerz, *m. mx.*, pain, grief, [**smart**]; Kopf—, headache; Zahn—, toothache.
schmerzen, *v. w.*, pain, grieve, [**smart**].
Schnee, *m. s.* (*no pl.*), **snow.**
Schneider, *m. s. 1*, tailor.
schneien, *v. w.*, **snow.**
schnell, *adj.*, swift, quick; *adv.*, quickly, fast, [**snell**].
Schnellzug, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), express train.
schon, *adv.*, already, quite.
schön, *adj.*, beautiful, lovely, [**sheen**].
Schönheit, *f. w.*, beauty; Natur—, beauty of nature.
schrecklich, *adj.*, terrible.
schreiben, *v. s.*, write, [**shrive**, *scribe*, *scrib-ble*].
schreien, *v. s.*, call, cry, scream.
schreiten, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein), step, stride.
Schrift, *f. w.*, writing, [**shrift**, *script*].
Schriftſteller, *m. s. 1*, writer, author.
Schritt, *m. s. 2*, step.
Schuh, *m. s. 2*, **shoe.**
Schuhmacher, *m. s. 1*, **shoemaker.**
Schuld, *f. w.*, debt, guilt, [**should**]; er iſt daran (*dat.*) ſchuld, it is his fault.
ſchuldig, *adj.*, indebted, guilty; — ſein, to owe.
Schule, *f. w.*, *school.*
Schüler, *m. s. 1*, *scholar*, pupil.
Schuljahr, *n. s. 2*, *school*-year.
Schuß, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* =üſſe), **shot.**
Schuſter, *m. s. 1*, cobbler.
ſchweigen, *v. s.*, be silent.
Schweigen, *n. s. 1* (*no pl.*), silence (§ 365).
Schweiz, *f.* (§ 225, 3), **Switz**-erland.
ſchwer, *adj.*, heavy, hard, grave, serious.
ſchwerlich, *adv.*, hardly, scarcely.
Schweſter, *f. w.*, **sister.**
Schwiegervater, *m. s. 1* (*pl.* ä), **father-in-law.**
Schwierigkeit, *f. w.*, difficulty.
ſchwimmen, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein), **swim.**
ſchwinden, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein), vanish, disappear.
Schwindſucht, *f. w.* (*no pl.*), consumption.
ſchwören, *v. s.*, **swear.**
See, *f. w.* (*pl.* Seen *or* Seeen), **sea**, ocean; —reiſe, *f. w.*, —fahrt, *f. w.*, voyage.
ſeekrank, *adj.*, **sea**-sick.
Seele, *f. w.*, soul.
ſehen, *v. s.*, **see.**
Se'henswür'digkeit, *f. w.*, **sight**, object, *or* place, of interest, [something **worth seeing**].
ſehnen (ſich), *v. w.*, long (for, **nach**).
ſehr, *adv.*, very, much, [**sore**].
ſein, *v. irr.* (§ 171), be.
ſein, *pron. poss.*, his, its, one's.
ſeit, *prep.* (*dat.*), since, (*duration of time*) for.
Seite, *f. w.*, **side**, page.
ſelbſt, *pron.*, **self**, myself, etc.
ſelten, *adj.*, rare; *adv.*, **seldom.**
ſeltſam, *adj.*, strange, quaint.
Semmel, *f. w.*, roll (bread).
ſenden, *v. w. irr.* (§ 330), **send.**
September, *m. s. 1*, *September.*
ſetzen, *v. w.*, **set, seat**, put; ſich —, to sit down.
ſich, *pron.*, *refl.*, himself, herself, itself, themselves.

ſicher, *adj.*, *secure*, *sure*, certain; *as adv.*, surely.
Sie, *pron.*, you; ſie, she, they, her, them.
Sieg, *m. s. 2*, victory.
Silber, *n. s.* (*no pl.*), **silver.**
ſilbern, *adj.*, **silver.**
ſingen, *v. s.*, **sing.**
ſinken, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein), **sink.**
Sinn, *m. s. 2*, sense, mind.
Sitte, *f. w.*, habit, custom.
ſittlich, *adj.*, moral.
Sitz, *m. s. 2*, seat, [**sit**].
ſitzen, *v. s.*, **sit.**
ſo, *adv.*, **so**, thus; *in exclamations and questions*, indeed!? ſo . . . als, as . . . as (§ 381, 1, *h*); ſo *introducing principal verb after subordinate clause usually not translated*, cf. p. 111, n. 2.
ſoeben, *adv.*, just now, just, [**so-even**].
Sofa, *n. s.* (*pl.* ȯ), *sofa*, lounge.
ſofort', *adv.*, at once.
ſogar', *adv.*, actually, even.
ſogenannt', *adj.*, so-called.
Sohn, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ö), **son.**
ſolch, *pron.*, *adj.*, **such** (§ 135).
Soldat', *m. w.*, *soldier.*
ſollen, *v. w.* (§ 189), **shall**, ought, be to, be said to (§ 191, 5).
Sommer, *m. s. 1*, **summer.**
ſonderbar, *adj.*, strange, peculiar, [a-**sunder**, **sundr**-y].
ſondern, *conj.*, but (§ 379, 1).
Sonnabend, *m. s. 2*, Saturday, [**eve** of **Sun**-day].
Sonne, *f. w.*, **sun**; —naufgang, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), sunrise; —nſtrahl, *m. mx.*, sunbeam.
Sonntag, *m. s. 2*, **Sunday.**
ſonſt, *adv.*, else, otherwise.
Sorge, *f. w.*, care, concern, anxiety, [**sorrow**].
ſorgfältig, *adj.* careful.
Spa'nier, *m. s. 1*, *Spaniard.*
ſpaniſch, *adj.*, *Spanish.*
ſparen, *v. w.*, save, **spare.**
ſparſam, *adj.*, saving, economical, [**spare**-some].
Sparſamkeit, *f. w.*, economy.
Spaß, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), jest, joke.
ſpät, *adj.*, late.
ſpäteſtens, *adv.*, at the latest.
ſpazie'ren, *v. w.* (*aux.* ſein), walk, saunter; —gehen, take a walk, go walking.
Spazier'gang, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), walk; einen — machen, take a walk.
Spiegel, *m. s. 1*, mirror.
ſpielen, *v. w.*, play.
Spielkamerad', *m. w.*, playmate, [*-comrade*].
Spitze, *f. w.*, point, top, [**spit**].
Sprache, *f. w.*, language.
Sprachlehrer, *m. s. 1*, language-teacher.
Sprachſtunde, *f. w.*, language-lesson.
ſprechen, *v. s.*, speak.
Sprichwort, *n. s. 3*, proverb.
ſpringen, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein), **spring**, jump.
Spruch, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), saying.
Staat, *m. mx.*, *state.*
Stadt, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), city, [**stead**, *i.e.* place]; —haus, *n. s. 3*, city-hall; —kirche, *f. w.*, city church; —muſeum, *n. mx.* (*pl.* -ſe'en), city museum; —park, *m. s. 2* (*pl. also* -ȯ), city park; —ſchule, *f. w.*, city school; —wahl, *f. w.*, city election.
Städtchen, *n. s. 1*, little city.
ſtark, *adj.*, strong, stout, (*of disease*) severe, [**stark**].
ſtattfinden, *v. s.*, take place, [**find stead**, *i.e.* place].
ſtecken, *v. w.*, put, **stick.**
ſtehen, *v. s. irr.* (§ 185), **stand.**
ſtehlen, *v. s.*, **steal.**
ſteigen, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein), climb, mount, [to **sty**].
Stelle, *f. w.*, place.
Stenograph', *m. w.*, *stenographer.*
ſterben *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein), die, [**starve**].
ſtets, *adv.*, always, [**stead**-ily].
Stimme, *f. w.*, voice, vote.
ſtimmen, *v. w.*, vote, tally, coincide.
Stimmung, *f. w.*, mood.
Stock, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ö), stick, cane, [**stock**].
ſtolz, *adj.*, proud, [**stout**].
Strafe, *f. w.*, punishment.
Strahl, *m. mx.*, beam, ray.

vergeuden, *v. w.*, waste.
vergleichen, *v. s.*, -liken, compare.
Vergnügen, *n. s. 1*, pleasure, enjoyment, [-enough].
Verhältnis, *n. s. 2*, relation.
verhindern, *v. w.*, -hinder, prevent.
verirren (sich), *v. w.*, lose one's way.
verkaufen, *v. w.*, sell.
verlangen, *v. w.*, demand, want, [-long].
verlassen, *v. s.*, leave, [-let]; sich — auf (*acc.*), rely *or* depend upon.
Verlauf, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* äu), course, [-leap].
verliebt, *ppl.*, in love (with, in, *acc.*).
verlieren, *v. s.*, lose; verloren, *ppl.*, lost, [forlorn]; verloren gehen, be lost, get lost.
verlobt, *ppl.*, engaged, betrothed (to = mit), [-love].
verloren, *see* verlieren.
vermeiden, *v. s.*, avoid.
Vermögen, *n. s. 1*, property, wealth.
verneinen, *v. w.*, answer (a question) in the negative.
verraten, *v. s.*, betray.
verreisen, *v. w.* (*aux.* sein), depart.
versammeln, *v. w.*, gather, assemble.
Versammlung, *f. w.*, assemblage, meeting.
verschieden, *adj.*, different, various.
verschließen, *v. s.*, lock.
verschmitzt, *adv.*, shrewdly.
verschwinden, *v. s.* (*aux.* sein), vanish, disappear.
versetzen, *v. w.*, answer, transpose.
versichern, *v. w.*, assure, [-*sure*].
versprechen, *v. s.*, promise.
Verstand, *m. s.* (*no pl.*), intelligence, under-stand-ing.
Verständnis, *n. s. 2*, understanding, comprehension.
verstehen, *v. s. irr.* (§ 185), understand.
versuchen, *v. w.*, try, attempt, [-*seek*].
verteidigen, *v. w.*, defend.
verwandt, *ppl.*, related; *as noun*, relative (§ 290, 2).
verweilen, *v. w.*, tarry, stay, [-while].
verzeihen, *v. s.* (*dat. of pers.*), pardon.
Vetter, *m. mx.*, cousin.
viel, *pron.* (§ 161), *adj.*, *adv.*, much.
vielleicht', *adv.*, perhaps.
vielmehr', *adv.*, rather.
Viertel, *n. s. 1*, quarter; —dollar, *m. s.* (*pl.* -ö), quarter(-dollar); —jahr, *n. s. 2*, quarter(-year); —stunde, *f. w.*, quarter-hour.
Vogel, *m. s. 1* (*pl.* ö), bird, [fowl].
Vögelchen, *n. s. 1*, little bird.
Vogelnest, *n. s. 3*, bird's nest.
Volk, *n. s. 3*, folk, people, nation; —sglaube, *m. mx.*, popular belief; —sleben, *n. s. 1*, people's life; —slied, *n. s. 3*, folk-song, popular song; —ssage, *f. w.*, popular legend; *pl.* folk-lore.
voll, *adj.*, full.
vollen'den, *v. w.*, complete, finish [-end].
vollends, *adv.*, completely, utterly.
vollkom'men, *adj.*, complete, perfect, thorough.
von, *prep.* (*dat.*), from, of, by.
vor, *prep.* (*dat. and acc.*), before, [fore].
Vorbereitung, *f. w.*, preparation, [fore-ready-]; —sschule, *f. w.*, preparatory school.
vor'gestern, *adv.*, day be-fore yester-day.
vorher', *adv.*, before, previously.
vorig, *adj.*, last, former.
vorkommen, *v. s.* (*aux.* sein), occur.
vorläufig, *adv.*, for the time being, for the present.
vor'mittags, *adv.*, in the forenoon, [fore-midday].
Vorrat, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), supply, stock.
vorschlagen, *v. s.*, propose.
Vorstellung, *f. w.*, performance.
Vorteil, *m. s. 2*, advantage.

vorüber, *adv.*, past, -ever.
vorwärts, *adv.*, **forward**(s).
Vorzug, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü), advantage.

wach, *adj.*, a-**wake**.
wachsen, *v. s.* (*aux.* sein), grow, [**wax**].
Wagen, *m. s. 1*, **wagon**, carriage, [**wain**].
Wahl, *f. w.*, choice, election.
wahr, *adj.*, true, genuine, real; nicht wahr? isn't it, doesn't it, aren't they, etc.
während, *sub. conj.*, while; *prep.* (*gen.*), during.
wahrhaft, *adj.*. truthful, real, actual; *as adv.*, truly, really.
Wahrheit, *f. w.*, truth.
wahrscheinlich, *adv.*, probably.
Wald, *m. s. 3*, forest, woods, [**wold**].
Wand, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), wall.
Wanderung, *f. w.*, **wandering**, travel.
wann, *adv.*, *inter. only*, **when**.
warm, *adj.*, **warm**.
warnen, *v. w.*, **warn** (of, vor, *dat.*).
Warnung, *f. w.*, **warning**.
warten, *v. w.*, wait, [**ward**].
warum', *adv. inter.*, why.
was, *pron. inter.*, **what**; — für ein (§ 145), what kind of; *as rel. pron.*, **which**, a thing which, etc. (§ 141).
Wasser, *n. s. 1*, **water**; —leitung, *f. w.*, water-supply (-**leading**), plumbing.
weder, *conj.*, neither; weder . . . noch, neither . . . nor.
Weg, *m. s. 2*, **way**, road.
wegen, *prep.* (*gen.*), on account of.
Weib, *n. s. 3*, woman, **wife**.
Weihnachten, *w. pl.*, Christmas.
Weihnachtsgeschenk, *n. s. 2*, Christmas present.
weil, *sub. conj.*, because, [**while**].
weinen, *v. w.*, weep, cry.
Weise, *f. w.*, way, manner, **wise**.
weiß, *adj.*, **white**.
weit, *adj.*, **wide**, broad, far; weiter, further.
welch, *pron. rel.*, *indef.*, *inter.*, who, **which**, that, **what** (§§ 144, 162).
Welt, *f. w.*, **world**; —stadt, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ä), cosmopolitan city.
wenden, *v. w. irr.* (§ 330), turn, [**wend**].
wenig, *adj.*, little; ein —, a little.
wenigstens, *adv.*, at least, at any rate.
wenn, *sub. conj.*, if, **when**.
wer, *pron. inter.*, who; *rel.*, he who, whoever (§ 140).
werden, *v. s. irr.* (§ 171, *aux.* sein), become, get, [**worth**].
werfen, *v. s.*, throw, cast, [**warp**].
Werk, *n. s. 2*, **work**.
weshalb, *adv. inter.*, why, wherefore.
Westen, *m. s. 1*, **west**.
westlich, *adj.*, west-; *as adv.*, westward.
weswegen, *adv. inter.*, on what account, wherefore, why.
Wetter, *n. s. 1*, **weather**.
wichtig, *adj.*, important, **weighty**.
Wichtigkeit, *f. w.*, importance, weighti-ness.
wider, *prep.* (*acc.*), against, [**with**].
widersprech'en, *v. s.*, contradict.
widersteh'en, *v. s. irr.* (§ 185), **withstand**, oppose.
wi'derwärtig, *adj.*, obnoxious, distasteful.
wie, *adv. and subj. conj.*, how, as, like, [**why**].
wieder, *adv.*, again, [**with**].
wiederauf'nehmen, *v. s.*, resume.
wiederho'len, *v. w.*, repeat; wiederholt', *ppl. as adv.*, repeatedly.
wie'dersehen, *v. s.*, see again; auf Wiedersehen, good-bye.
wiegen, *v. s.*, weigh.
wild, *adj.*, **wild**, savage.
Wille, *m. mx.* (*gen.* -ns), **will**; um . . . willen, *with gen.*, for the sake of.
willkom'men, *adj.*, **welcome**.
Wind, *m. s. 2*, wind.
Winter, *m. s. 1*, winter; —abend, *m. s. 2*, winter-evening.
Wirken, *n. s. 1*, **work**, activity, effect.
wirklich, *adv.*, really.
wirkungsvoll, *adj.*, effective, strong, [**working-full**].

allied, verbündet, *ppl. adj.*
allow, erlauben, *w.* (*dat. of pers.*); to be —ed to, dürfen (§§ 189–191).
almost, beinahe, fast.
alone, allein.
along, *adv.*, her, mit; come —, kommen Sie mit; — with, zugleich mit; *prep.*, längs (*gen.*).
alongside, neben (*acc. and dat.*).
already, schon.
also, auch.
altar, Altar, *m. s. 2* (*pl. also* ä).
although, obgleich, obwohl, *sub. conj's.*
altogether, (utterly) durchaus, gar, ganz und gar.
always, immer, stets.
am, bin; am visiting, besuche, am going, gehe. (See p. 34, n. 5.)
America, Amerika.
American, Amerikaner, *m. s. 1.*
American, *adj.*, amerikanisch.
amiss, übel; to take —, übel nehmen.
among, unter, zwischen (*dat. and acc.*); — them, darunter.
amount, — to, betragen, *s.*
amply, reichlich.
ancient, alt; (primeval) uralt; the ancients, die Alten.
and, und.
angel, Engel, *m. s. 1.*
animal, Tier, *n. s. 2.*
annihilation, Vernichtung, *f. w.*
anniversary, Jahrestag, *m. s. 2.*
another, (additional) noch ein; (different) ein anderer; one —, einander (*indcl.*).
answer, Antwort, *f. w.*
answer, antworten (*dat. of pers.*); (*trans.*) beantworten; (reply) versetzen; — in the negative, verneinen (*trans.*).
antiquity, (in all senses) Altertum, *n. s. 3.*
anxiety, (fear) Angst, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* Ä); (care, solicitude) Besorgnis, *f. s. 2*; Sorge, *f. w.*
anxious, be —, sich ängstigen, *w.*; to make —, to trouble, bang(e) [*adv.*] machen, *with dat.*
any, irgend (§ 152); have you — money, hast du etwas Geld? — one, jemand, irgend jemand; — thing, etwas, irgend etwas; not —thing, nichts; —thing but, nichts weniger als; — such thing, so etwas; —way, eigentlich, *adv.*
apartment(s), Wohnung, *f. w.*
ape, Affe, *m. w.*
apparel, Kleidung, *f. w.*
apparent(ly), scheinbar.
appear, (look) aussehen, *s.*; (seem) scheinen, *s.*; (make one's appearance) erscheinen, *s.* (*aux.* sein).
appearance(s), Schein, *m. s. 2.*
apple, Apfel, *m. s. 1* (*pl.* Ä); —shot, Apfelschuß, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* üsse).
appoint, ernennen, *w.* (§ 330).
approve, billigen, *w.*
April, April, *m. s. 2.*
Aristotle, Aristoteles.
arm, Arm, *m. s. 2.*
army, Armee, *f. w.*; Heer, *n. s. 2.*
around, um (*acc.*).
arrangement, Verabredung, *f. w.*
arrive, ankommen, *s.* (*aux.* sein).
art, Kunst, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ü).
artistic, —taste, Kunstgeschmack.
as, (*temporal*) als, da, wie (§ 381, 1, *a*, *b*, *l*); (*modal*) wie; (*causal* = since) da; *all sub. conj's.* not so good as, nicht so gut wie; as you say, wie du sagst; as . . . as, so . . . as, so . . . als (§ 381, 1, *h*); as if, als ob, als wenn (§ 359, 3); as for me, was mich betrifft.
ascend, *intr.* hinaufsteigen, *s.* (*aux.* sein); *tr.* besteigen, *s.*
ascertain, erfahren, *s.*
ashamed, to be —, sich schämen, *refl. w.* (*with gen.*).
ashes, Asche, *f. w.*
aside, bei Seite; — from, außer (*dat.*).
ask, (question) fragen, *w.*; (request) bitten, *s.*; (demand) verlangen, *w.*; — for, bitten um (*acc.*).
asleep, fall —, einschlafen, *s.* (*aux.* sein).
assemblage, Versammlung, *f. w.*
assemble, (*trans.*) versammeln, *w.*
assert, behaupten, *w.*
assumed, (name) falsch.
assure, versichern, *w.*
astonished, erstaunt.

astonishment, Erstaunen, *n. s. 1* (*no pl.*).
at, an (*dat. and acc.*), zu (*dat.*); (*of time*), um (*acc.*); (with, at the house of) bei (*dat.*); — the window, an dem Fenster; — a table, an einem Tische; — home, zu Hause; — ten o'clock, um zehn Uhr; — your house, bei Ihnen zu Hause; — any rate, jedenfalls; — No. 2, Numero zwei; — once, sofort; — the most, höchstens.
athletics, Turnübungen, *f. w. pl.*
attach, — oneself to, sich hängen an (*acc.*), *w.*
attack, anfallen, *s.*
attend, (visit) besuchen; — to, besorgen, *w.*
audience, Zuschauer, *m. s. 1, pl.*
August, August, *m. s. 2.*
aunt, Tante, *f. w.*
author, (in the sense of 'writer by profession') Schriftsteller, *m. s. 1;* (otherwise) Autor, *m. mx.*, Verfasser, *m. s. 1.*
autumn, Herbst, *m. s. 2;* — time, Herbstzeit, *f. w.*
avail, helfen (*with dat.*); it —s nothing, es hilft nichts.
average, Durchschnitt, *m. s. 2;* on an —, im Durchschnitt.
avoid, vermeiden, *s.;* (evade) umgeh'en, *s.* (§ 185).
await, warten (*with gen.*).
awake, *adj.*, wach.
awake, *v. intrans.*, erwachen, *w.*
awake(n), *v. trans.*, erwecken, *w.*
away, fort; far —, weit entfernt.

back, *adv.*, zurück.
background, Hintergrund, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü).
backwoodsman, Hinterwäldler, *m. s. 1.*
bad, schlecht, schlimm, (evil, wicked) böse.
ball, Ball, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
band, Band, *n. s. 2.*
bank, Ufer, *n. s. 1.*
barbarian, Barbar, *m. w.*
base, unedel.
bath, Bad, *n. s. 3.*
bathe, baden, *w.*
battle, Schlacht, *f. w.*
be, sein, *s. irr.* (§ 171, *aux.* sein); (= be present, involved) vorhanden sein; — (= fare) with, stehen um.
beam, Strahl, *m. mx.*
bear, Bär, *m. w.*
beard, Bart, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
beast, Tier, *n. s. 2.*
beat, schlagen, *s.*
beautiful, schön.
beauty, Schönheit, *f. w.;* — of nature, Naturschönheit.
because, weil, *sub. conj.*
become, werden, *s. irr.* (§ 171, *aux.* sein).
bed, Bett, *n. mx.*
bedroom, Schlafzimmer, *n. s. 1.*
bee, Biene, *f. w.*
befit, ziemen (*dat.*).
before, *prep.* vor (*dat. and acc.*); *sub. conj.*, bevor, ehe; *adv.* (= hitherto) bisher; there are four days — Christmas, es sind vier Tage bis Weihnachten.
beg, (request) bitten (for, um, *acc.*).
beggar, Bettler, *m. s. 1.*
begin, beginnen, *s.*, anfangen, *s.*
beginning, Anfang, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä); from the —, vom Anfang an; in the —, anfangs, *adv.*
behavior, Betragen, *n. s. 1.*
behind, hinter (*dat. and acc.*).
being, Wesen, *n. s. 1;* human —, Mensch, *m. w.*
belief, Glaube, *m. mx.* (*gen.* -ns).
believe, glauben, *w.* (*dat. of pers.*); — in, glauben an (*acc.*).
bell, Glocke, *f. w.*
belong, gehören, *w.* (*dat.* = to); — to (be a part of), gehören zu; — to (be the duty of), sein (*with dat.*).
below, *prep.*, unter (*dat. and acc.*); the picture —, das Bild darunter.
bench, Bank, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
bend, biegen, *s.*
beneficial, zuträglich.
beside, neben (*dat. and acc.*).
besides, außerdem, dazu.
best, best, am besten; *as adv.*, am besten, aufs beste (§ 375, 2).
betray, verraten, *s.*
better, besser; make —, bessern, *w.*
between, zwischen (*dat. and acc.*).

beyond, jenseits (*gen.*).
bible, Bibel, *f. w.*
bicycle, Fahrrad, *n. s. 3.*
bind, binden, *s.*
bird, Vogel, *m. s. 1* (*pl.* ö).
birth, Geburt, *f. w.*
birthday, Geburtstag, *m. s. 2.*
birthplace (i.e. the house), Geburtshaus, *n. s. 3.*
bite, beißen, *s.*
bitter, sauer.
black, schwarz.
blame, to — for (i.e. to be to blame for), schuld sein an (*dat.*).
blessing, Gut, *n. s. 3.*
blind, *adj.*, blind.
blind, *v.*, blenden, *w.*
blood, Blut, *n. s.* (*no pl.*).
bloody, blutig.
bloom, blühen, *w.*
blow, *v.*, blasen, *s.*
blue, blau.
board, (fare) Kost, *f. w.*
board, *v.*, Pension haben.
boarding-house, Pension, *f. w.*
boat, (row-boat) Kahn, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä); (= steamboat) Dampfer, *m. s. 1.*
body, Leib, *m. s. 3.*
boil, kochen, *w.*
bold, frisch.
bond, Band, *n. s. 2.*
book, Buch, *n. s. 3;* — case, Bücherschrank, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä); — store, Buchhandlung, *f. w.;* — trade, Buchhandel, *m. s.* (*no pl.*).
border, Rand, *m. s. 3.*
bore, quälen, *w.*
born, geboren.
bosom, — friend, Herzensfreund, *m. s. 2.*
both, beide; both . . . and, sowohl . . . als (auch).
box, Kasten, *m. s. 1.*
boy, Knabe, *m. w.*, Junge, *m. w.*, Bube, *m. w.;* —s' school, Knabenschule, *f. w.*
branch, Zweig, *m. s. 2.*
brave, tapfer.
bread, Brot, *n. s. 2.*
breadth, Breite, *f. w.*
break, brechen, *s.;* — loose, losbrechen (*intr.*, *aux.* sein).
breakfast, Frühstück, *n. s. 2.*
breathe, atmen, *w.*
breeding, Zucht, *f.* (*no pl.*).
breeze, Luft, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ü).
bridge, Brücke, *f. w.*
bright, hell, klar.
bring, bringen, *w. irr.* (§ 330); — up (hither), heraufführen, *w.;* — up (educate), erziehen, *s.*
broad, breit.
brook, Bach, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
brother, Bruder, *m. s. 1* (*pl.* ü).
brown, braun.
build, bauen, *w.*
building, (act of —) Bau, *m. s. 2* (§ 275, 2, *a*); (structure) Gebäude, *n. s. 1.*
burn, brennen, *w. irr.* (§ 330); — down, niederbrennen.
burst, losbrechen, *s.* (*intr.*, *aux.* sein).
bush, Busch *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü).
bushes, (thicket) Gebüsch, *n. s. 2.*
busied, beschäftigt.
business, Geschäft, *n. s. 2;* on — of state, in Staatsgeschäften.
busy, beschäftigt.
but, aber, sondern (§ 379, 1), doch; (= only) nur.
butter, Butter, *f.* (*no pl.*).
buy, kaufen, *w.*
by, an (*dat.*); bei (*dat.*); *with the passive*, von (*dat.*); = by means of, durch (*acc.*); — the window, am Fenster; by the train, mit dem Zuge; by rail, mit der Eisenbahn; by a messenger, durch einen Boten.

call, (summon) rufen, *s.;* — on, rufen; — away, abrufen; (cry) schreien, *s.;* (name) nennen, *w. irr.* (§ 330); be called (named), heißen, *s.*
call, (= visit) Besuch, *m. s. 2.*
calm, gefaßt, *ppl.*; ruhig.
can, können (§§ 189–191).
candid, aufrichtig.
candidate, Kandidat, *m. w.*
cane, Stock, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ö).
capable, fähig (of = zu).
capital (-city), Hauptstadt, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
capital, (principal) Kapital, *n. s. 2* (*pl. also* -ien).
capital, *adj.*, trefflich.

captain (of a ship), Kapitän, *m. s. 2.*
card, Karte, *f. w.*
care, Besorgnis, *f. s. 2*, Sorge, *f. w.;* take —, sorgen, *w.*
care, to — about, sich kümmern, *refl. w.*, um (*acc.*).
careful, sorgfältig.
careful, to be —, sich hüten, *refl. w.*
carefully, sorgfältig; (exactly) genau.
carriage, Wagen, *m. s. 1.*
carry, tragen, *s.;* — on (a conversation, a war), führen; (= employ), treiben, *s.*
case, Fall, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
cast, werfen, *s.*
castle, Schloß, *n. s. 3* (*pl.* -österr); Burg, *f. w.*
cathedral, Dom, *m. s. 2;* Kathedrale, *f. w.;* — church, Kathedralkirche, *f. w.*
cause, (reason) Grund, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü); (agency) Ursache, *f. w.;* (affair) Sache, *f. w.*
cause, *v.*, lassen, *s.*
cease, aufhören, *w.*
celebrate, feiern, *w.*
cent, Cent, *m. s.* (*pl.* —s).
central, central; — station, Centralbahnhof, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ö).
century, Jahrhundert, *n. s. 2.*
certain, gewiß; to know for —, gewiß (*or* sicher) wissen.
chain, Kette, *f. w.*
chair, Stuhl, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü).
change, *intr.* sich verändern.
character, Charakter, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* -tere).
charge, take — of, sich annehmen, *s.* (*w. gen.*).
charge (of a weapon), Schuß, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü).
Charles, Karl.
charm, Reiz, *m. s. 2.*
charming, reizend, bezaubernd, *ppl. adj.*
chat, plaudern.
cheap, billig.
cheerful, heiter.
cherish, hegen, *w.*
chief, *in compounds*, Haupt-; — reason, Hauptgrund, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü); — study, Hauptstudium, *n. mx.* (*pl.* -ien).
chiefly, hauptsächlich.
child, Kind, *n. s. 3;* little —, Kindchen, *n. s. 1.*
childhood, Kindheit, *f. w.*
choice, Wahl, *f. w.*
choir, Chor, *n. s. 2* (*pl.* ö).
choose, wählen, *w.*
Christian, Christ, *m. w.*
Christmas, Weihnachten, *pl.;* — gift, Weihnachtsgeschenk, *n. s. 2.*
church, Kirche, *f. w.*
citizen, Bürger, *m. s. 1.*
city, Stadt, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ä); on — business, in Stadtgeschäften; — clock, Stadtuhr, *f. w.;* — election, Stadtwahl, *f. w.;* — hall, Stadthaus, *n. s.;* — library, Stadtbibliothek, *f. w.;* — park, Stadtpark, *m. s. 2* (*pl. also* —s); — school, Stadtschule, *f. w.;* — theater, Stadttheater, *n. s. 1;* little —, Städtchen, *n. s. 1.*
claim, they — to have seen . . ., man will . . . gesehen haben.
class, Klasse, *f. w.*
clear, klar; make —, erklären, *w.;* (evident) offenbar; (bright) hell.
clearly, offenbar.
clever, klug.
cleverness, Klugheit, *f. w.*
climate, Klima, *n. s.* (*pl.* -ta *or* -te).
climb, (*intrans.*) klimmen, *s.* (*aux.* sein), steigen, *s.* (*aux.* sein); (*trans.*) besteigen, *s.*
cloak, Mantel, *m. s. 1* (*pl.* ä).
clock, Uhr, *f. w.;* city —, Stadtuhr.
close, Schluß, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* -üsse).
close, *adj.*, dicht, nahe (near); — by, neben, *prep.* (*dat.*).
close, *v.*, schließen, *s.;* — up, abschließen, *s.*
cloth, Tuch, *n. s. 2–3* (Tücher in compounds; cf. § 276, *a.*)
clothes, Kleider, *pl.*
clothing, Kleidung, *f. w.;* article of —, Kleidungsstück, *n. s. 2.*
cloud, Wolke, *f. w.*
coach, Kutsche, *f. w.*
coat, Rock, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ö).
cobbler, Schuster, *m. s. 1.*
coffee, Kaffee, *m. s.* (*no pl.*).
coincide, stimmen, *w.*

cold, *adj.*, kalt.
cold, (weather) Kälte, *f.* (*no pl.*).
cold, (sickness) Erkältung, *f. w.*; to take —, sich erkälten, *refl. w.*
collection, Sammlung, *f. w.*
come, kommen, *s.* (*aux.* sein); — by, kommen zu; — before, treten vor (*acc.*); — between, treten zwischen (*acc.*); — toward, — to meet, entgegenkommen; come-to-be, werden.
comedy, Lustspiel, *n. s. 2.*
comfort, trösten, *w.*
comfortable, bequem.
coming, *adj.*, künftig.
command, befehlen, *s.* (*dat.*); gebieten, *s.* (*dat.*).
commander-in-chief, Feldherr, *m. w.* (§ 94, 1).
commerce, Handel, *m. s.* (*no pl.*).
commit, begehen, *s. irr.* (§ 185).
committee, Ausschuß, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* -üsse).
common, gemein.
companion, Kamerad, *m. w.*
company, Gesellschaft, *f. w.*
compare, vergleichen, *s.*
compel, zwingen, *s.*; be compelled, müssen (§§ 189–191).
complete, vollenden, *w.*
complete, *adj.*, vollkommen.
completely, vollends.
composed, gefaßt, *ppl.*
composer, Komponist, *m. w.*
composition, Aufsatz, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
comprehend, begreifen, *s.*
comprehensible, begreiflich.
comprehension, Verständnis, *n. s. 2.*
comrade, Kamerad, *m. w.*
conceal, verbergen, *s.*
conception, Begriff, *m. s. 2.*
concern, Sorge, *f. w.*, Unruhe, *f. w.*
concern, *v.*, betreffen, *s.*; so far as I am —ed, was mich betrifft; (= trouble) kümmern, *w.*
concerned, in Sorge; not —, ohne Sorge; be —, care about, sich kümmern um (*acc.*).
concerning, (about) über (*acc.*); (= in reference to) in betreff, *with gen.*
concert, Konzert, *n. s. 2*; — hall, Konzertsaal, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* -säle).
conclude, schließen, *s.*
condition, (terms) Bedingung, *f. w.*
condition, (state) Zustand, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
conduct, führen, *w.*
conduct, (behavior) Betragen, *n. s. 1.*
confess, bekennen, *w. irr.* (§ 330); gestehen, *s. irr.* (§ 185).
confidently, getrost.
conflict, Streit, *m. s. 2.*
connection, Zusammenhang, *m. s.* (*no pl.*).
conquer, erobern, *w.*
consecrate, einweihen, *w.*
consequence, Folge, *f. w.*
consider, (deem) halten . . . für (§ 265, 3, *c*), betrachten (als) *w.*; (reflect, think over,) überlegen, *w.*
considerable, beträchtlich.
consist (of), bestehen (aus), *s. irr.* (§ 185); — in, bestehen in (*dat.*).
consumption, Schwindsucht, *f. w.*
contain, enthalten, *s.*; contains, enthält.
content(ed), zufrieden.
contents, Inhalt, *m. s. 2.*
continue, (last) dauern, *w.*; *trans.*, fortsetzen, *w.*; *intrans.* (= keep on) fortfahren, *s.* (*aux.* haben).
contradict, widersprechen, *s.*
contrary, Gegenteil, *n. s. 2*; on the —, im Gegenteil.
contrast, Gegensatz, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
control, able to —, mächtig (*with gen.*).
convent, Kloster, *n. s. 1* (*pl.* ö).
conversation, Gespräch, *n. s. 2.*
convince, überzeugen, *w.*
cool, kühl.
copy, abschreiben, *s.*
cordial, herzlich.
correct, *adj.*, richtig.
correct, *v.*, verbessern, *w.*
cost, kosten, *w.*
cost, (expense) Kosten, *pl.*
cottage, Häuschen, *n. s. 1.*
could, konnte, könnte (§ 191, 2); — have done, hätte thun können (§ 192 *and* 1).
counsel, Rat, *m. s.* (*no pl. in this sense*).
count, (reckon) rechnen, *w.* (on = auf, *acc.*); (enumerate) zählen, *w.*; *intr.* (= be reckoned or considered), gelten, *s.*

count, (title) Graf, *m. w.*
countenance, Gesicht, *n. s. 3.*
country, Land, *n. s. 2–3* (§ 276, *a*); (go) to the —, auf das Land; in the —, auf dem Lande; (= native country) Vaterland, *n. s.;* (region) Gegend, *f. w.*
countryman, (= fellow —) Landsmann, *m. s. 3* (*pl.* -leute, § 238, 2, *a.*)
couple, a —, ein paar; a — of times, ein paarmal.
courage, Mut, *m. s.* (*no pl.*).
course, (of study) Kursus, *m. s.* (*pl.* Kursus *or* Kurse).
course, in the — of, im Verlauf (*m. s. 2, pl.* äu).
course, of —, natürlich.
court, Hof, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ö); — life, Hofleben, *n. s. 1.*
courtesy, Höflichkeit, *f. w.*
cousin, *masc.*, Vetter, *m. mx.*
cousin, *fem.*, Cousine, *f. w.*
cover, decken, *w.*
crime, Verbrechen, *n. s. 1.*
crowd, Menge, *f. w.*
crown, Krone, *f. w.*
crown-prince, Kronprinz, *m. w.*
cry, (call) schreien, *s.;* (weep) weinen, *w.*
cultivate, bilden, *w.*
cup, Tasse, *f. w.*
cure, kurieren, *w.*
curiosity, Neugierde, *f. w.*
curiosities, natural —, Naturalien, *pl.*
curious, neugierig.
current, Strom, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ö).
cushion, Kissen, *n. s. 1.*
custom, Sitte, *f. w.*

daily, täglich.
Dame, Frau.
dance, tanzen, *w.*
dance, Tanz, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü); — music, Tanzmusik, *f.*
danger, Gefahr, *f. w.*
dangerous, gefährlich.
dark, dunkel, finster.
dart, schießen, *s.*
daughter, Tochter, *f. s. 1* (*pl.* ö).
day, Tag, *m. s. 2;* in the daytime, am Tage; one — (= some day, some time), einst.
dazzle, blenden, *w.*
dead, tot; to be a — man, des Todes sein.
dear, teuer, lieb.
death, Tod, *m. s. 2* (§ 238, 1, *b*).
debt, Schuld, *f. w.*
deceased, verstorben, *ppl. adj.*
deceive, (mislead) verführen, *w.*
December, Dezember, *m. s. 1.*
decide, entscheiden, *s.*
deed, That, *f. w.*
deep, tief; — black, tiefschwarz.
defend, verteidigen, *w.*
definite, bestimmt.
degree, Grad, *m. s. 2.*
delight, Freude, *f. w.*
delight, to — in, sich ergötzen (*w.*) an (*dat.*).
demand, verlangen, *w.;* fordern, *w.*
democrat, Demokrat, *m. w.*
denote, bezeichnen, *w.*
dense, dicht.
dentist, Zahnarzt, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* -ärzte).
depart, abreisen, *w.* (*aux.* sein).
departure, Aufbruch, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü).
depend, abhängen, *s.* (on = von, *dat.*); ankommen, *s.* (on = auf, *acc.*); — upon (rely), sich verlassen (*s.*) auf (*acc.*).
depth, Tiefe, *f. w.*
describe, beschreiben, *s.*
description, Beschreibung, *f. w.*
deserve, verdienen, *w.*
desire, Lust, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ü).
desk, Pult, *m.* (*and n.*) *s. 2.*
despise, verachten, *w.*
destination, Ziel, *n. s. 2.*
determine, sich entschließen, *s.*
devil, Teufel, *m. s. 1.*
dictionary, Wörterbuch, *n. s. 3.*
die, sterben, *s.* (*aux.* sein).
differ, abweichen, *s.*
difference, Unterschied, *m. s. 2.*
different, verschieden; (otherwise) anders.
differently, anders.
difficult, schwierig, schwer.
difficulty, Schwierigkeit, *f. w.;* (obstacle) Hindernis, *n. s. 2;* (trouble) Mühe, *f. w.*
dig, graben, *s.*
direction, Richtung, *f. w.;* in the — of, entgegen (*dat.*).
directly, gleich.

director, Direktor, *m. mx.*
disappear, schwinden, verschwinden, *s.* (*aux.* sein).
disappointment, Enttäuschung, *f. w.*
discovery, Entdeckung, *f. w.*
discussion, Besprechung, *f. w.*
disease, Krankheit, *f. w.*
disgrace, Schmach, *f.* (*no pl.*).
disgraceful, schändlich.
displease, mißfallen, *s.* (*dat.*).
distance, (remoteness) Ferne, *f. w.*; (stretch) Strecke, *f. w.*
distant, entfernt.
distasteful, widerwärtig.
distinct, deutlich.
distinguish, unterscheiden, *s.*
distress, Not, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ö).
divide, teilen, *w.*
divided, be — into, zerfallen in (*acc.*).
do, (*as aux., untranslated, e. g.* do you know, kennen Sie); thun, *s. irr.* (§ 185); machen, *w.*; to — an exercise, eine Aufgabe machen; that won't do, das geht nicht; (of the health), sich befinden, *refl. s.*; how do you do? wie befinden Sie sich?
doctor, Doktor, *m. mx.*; doctor's title, Doktortitel, *m. s. 1.*
dog, Hund, *m. s. 2.*
dollar, Dollar, *m. s.* (*pl.* -s); Thaler, *m. s. 1.*
door, Thür(e), *f. w.*
doubt, Zweifel, *m. s. 1*; no —, wohl.
dozen, Dutzend, *n. s. 2.*
dragon, Drache, *m. w.*
drama, Drama, *n. mx.*
dramatic, dramatisch.
draw, ziehen, *s.*
drawing, Zeichnung, *f. w.*
dream, Traum, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* äu).
dream, *v.*, träumen, *w.*
dress, Kleid, *n. s. 3.*
drink, trinken, *s.*; (immoderately) saufen, *s.*
drive, (*trans.*) treiben, *s.*; — out, vertreiben; (*intrans.*) fahren, *s.* (*aux.* sein).
drop, Tropfen, *m. s. 1.*
drunken, betrunken.
dry, *adj.*, trocken.
dry, *v.*, trocknen, *w.*
duel, Zweikampf, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
dull, *langweilig.*
during, während (*gen.*).
dust, Staub, *m. s.* (*no pl.*).
duty, Pflicht, *f. w.*

each, jed- (§ 153); — other, sich, uns, euch (§ 123, 3), einander (*indcl.*).
eager, begierig.
eagle, Adler, *m. s. 1.*
ear, Ohr, *n. mx.*
early, früh.
earn, verdienen, *w.*
earth, Erde, *f. w.*
Easter, Ostern, *pl. only.*
easy, leicht; — chair, Lehnstuhl, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü).
eat, essen, *s.*; (of animals, or contemptuously of persons) fressen, *s.*
economical, sparsam.
economy, Sparsamkeit, *f. w.*
edge, Rand, *m. s. 3.*
edition, Ausgabe, *f. w.*
educate, erziehen, *s.*
effective, wirkungsvoll.
egg, Ei, *n. s. 3.*
either, *with negatives*, auch; nor I —, ich auch nicht; either . . . or, entweder . . . oder.
elderly, älter.
election, Wahl, *f. w.*
else, (otherwise) sonst; nothing —, nichts and(e)res.
emergency, Notfall, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
emperor, Kaiser, *m. s. 1.*
empire, Reich, *n. s. 2.*
employ, sich bedienen, *w.* (*with gen.*).
enclose, beilegen, *w.*
end, Schluß, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* Schlüsse); Ende, *n. mx.*
endure, ertragen, *s.*
enemy, Feind, *m. s. 2.*
engaged, — to, verlobt mit (*dat.*).
English, englisch.
Englishman, Engländer, *m. s. 1.*
enjoy, genießen, *s.*; to — one's self, sich amüsieren, *refl. w.*
enjoyment, Vergnügen, *n. s. 1.*
enough, genug (*indcl.*); to be —, genügen, *w.*
enter, eintreten (in, *acc.*); to — into, sich einlassen (*refl. s.*) auf (*acc.*).
entertain, unterhalten.
entertaining(ly), unterhaltend.
entire(ly), ganz.
environs, Umgebung, *f. w.*

error, Irrtum, *m. s. 3.*
escape, entgehen, *s. irr.* (§ 185), (*aux.* sein, *with dat.*).
especially, besonders.
essay, Aufsatz, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
esteem, schätzen, *w.*
estimate, angeben, *s.*
eternal, ewig.
Europe, Europa, *n.*
evade, umgehen, *s. irr.* (§ 185).
even, eben, sogar; — if, wenn auch, *sub. conj.*
evening, Abend, *m. s. 2.*; this —, heute abend; — paper, Abendzeitung, *f. w.*
ever, jemals.
everlasting, ewig.
every, jed= (§ 153); — other day, alle zwei Tage.
everyone, jedermann (§ 153).
everything, alles (§ 146, 2).
everywhere, überall.
evident(ly), offenbar.
evil, Übel, *n. s. 1.*
evil, *adj.*, übel, böse.
exact, genau; (= altogether, entirely) ganz.
exactly, genau, gerade.
exaggerate, übertreiben, *s.*
examination, Examen, *n. s.* (*pl.* =amina).
examine, (look at) besehen, *s.*
example, Beispiel, *n. s. 2.*; for —, zum Beispiel (*abbreviated* z. B.).
exceedingly, äußerst.
excellent, trefflich.
except, *v.* ausnehmen, *s.*
except, *prep.*, außer (*dat.*); — on, außer an.
exception, Ausnahme, *f. w.*
exclusively, lauter.
excursion, Ausflug, *m. s. 2.* (*pl.* ü).
exercise, (task) Aufgabe, *f. w.*; (practice) Übung, *f. w.*
exhausted, erschöpft.
expect, erwarten, *w.*
expense, Kosten, *pl. only.*
expensive, teuer.
experience, Erfahrung, *f. w.*
explain, erklären, *w.*; auseinandersetzen, *w.*
explanation, Erklärung, *f. w.*
exposition, Ausstellung, *f. w.*
express, ausdrücken, *w.*; aussprechen, *s.*
express (= express train), Schnellzug, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü).
expression, Ausdruck, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü).
extent, Umfang, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
exterior, äußer= (§ 290, 2).
extremely, äußerst.
eye, Auge, *n. mx.*; trouble with the —s, Augenleiden, *n. s. 1*; disease of the —s, Augenkrankheit, *f. w.*

face, Gesicht, *n. s. 3.*
fact, Thatsache, *f. w.*; in —, in der That, eigentlich.
fail, fehlen, *w.*; — of, verfehlen (*gen.*).
fair, *adj.*, schön.
fair, Messe, *f. w.*
faith, Glaube, *m. mx.* (*gen.* =ns).
faithful, treu.
faithfully, treulich.
fall, fallen, *s.* (*aux.* sein); — down, hinunterfallen.
fall, (autumn) Herbst, *m. s. 2.*
false, falsch.
familiar, bekannt (to, *dat.*).
family, Familie, *f. w.*; — festival, Familienfest, *n. s. 2*; — portrait, Familienbild, *n. s. 3.*
famous, berühmt.
far, weit, fern; so — as, soweit, *sub. conj.*; — away, entfernt.
fare, Kost, *f. w.* (*no pl.*).
fashion, Mode, *f. w.*; it is the —, es ist in der Mode.
fast, *adj.*, *adv.*, schnell, rasch; (fixed, firm) fest.
fate, Schicksal, *n. s. 2.*
father, Vater, *m. s. 1* (*pl.* ä).
father-in-law, Schwiegervater, *m. s. 1* (*pl.* ä).
fatherland, Vaterland, *n. s.* (*no pl.*).
fatigue, ermüden, *w.*
fault, Schuld, *f. w.*; it is his —, er ist schuld daran (*dat.*).
favor, Gefallen, *m. mx.* (§ 279, 2).
favorable, günstig (to, *dat.*).
fear, Furcht, *f.* (*no pl.*).
fear, *v.*, fürchten, *w.*
feather, Feder, *f. w.*
February, Februar, *m. s. 2.*
fee, Honorar, *n. s. 2.*
feel, fühlen, *w.*; (be sensible of) empfinden, *s.*; to — concerned, in Sorge sein; the fresh air —s good, die frische Luft thut einem wohl.

feeling, Gefühl, *n. s. 2;* Gemüt, *n. s. 3;* have a strange —, seltsam zu Mute sein (*dat. of pers.*).
fellow, Kerl, *m. s. 2;* little —, Kerlchen, *n. s. 1.*
fertile, fruchtbar.
festival, Fest, *n. s. 2.*
fetch, holen, *w.*
fever, Fieber, *n. s. 1.*
few, wenige; a —, ein paar, einige.
fidelity, Treue, *f.* (*no pl.*).
field, Feld, *n. s. 3.*
fifteen, fünfzehn.
fight, *intr.* fechten, *s.; tr.* kämpfen, *w.*
fill, (occupy) besetzen, *w.*
finally, endlich.
find, finden, *s.;* to — one's self, sich befinden; be found, sich finden.
fine, schön; (delicate) fein.
finger, Finger, *m. s. 1.*
finish, vollenden, *w.*
finished, (done) fertig; (over) vorüber.
fire, Feuer, *n. s. 1.*
firm, fest.
first, *adj.*, erst; *adv.* (not until) erst; at —, zuerst; in the — place, erstens; (next) zunächst.
fit, passen, *w.* (*dat.*).
five, fünf.
fix, richten, *w.*
flash, Blitz, *m. s. 2.*
flatter, schmeicheln, *w.* (*dat.*).
flattering, schmeichelhaft.
flee, — over, hinüberfliehen, *s.* (*aux.* sein).
flight (of stairs), Treppe, *f. w.*
flow, fließen, *s.* (*aux.* sein, cf. § 323, 1, *c*).
flower, Blume, *f. w.*
fluent(ly), geläufig.
fly, fliegen, *s.* (*aux.* sein); — away (= flee), hinfliehen, *s.* (*aux.* sein).
fog, Nebel, *m. s. 1.*
folk, Volk, *n. s. 3;* — song, Volkslied, *n. s. 3;* — lore, Volkssagen, *pl.*
follow, *intr.* folgen, *w.* (*aux.* sein, *dat.*); *tr.* befolgen, *w.*
following, folgend, *ppl. adj.*
folly, Narrheit, *f. w.*
fond, be — of, lieb haben; grow —, *of, liebgewinnen, s.*
fool, Narr, *m. w.;* Thor, *m. w.*
foot, Fuß, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü); on —, zu Fuß; set — upon, betreten, *s.*
football, Fußball, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
footpad, Straßenräuber, *m. s. 1.*
for, *prep.*, für (*acc.*), zu (*dat.*); (*of time since*) seit (*dat.*); *time how long expressed by acc. without prep.;* — example, — instance, zum Beispiel; to know — certain, gewiß (*or* sicher) wissen.
for, *conj.*, denn.
forbid, verbieten, *s.* (*dat. of pers.*).
force, *n.*, Kraft, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ä); Gewalt, *f. w.*
force, *v.*, zwingen, *s.*
foreign, fremd, ausländisch; — land *or* country, Fremde, *f. w.*
forenoon, in the —, vormittags.
forest, Wald, *m. s. 3;* Holz, *n. s. 3.*
forget, vergessen, *s.*
forgive, vergeben, *s.* (*dat. of pers.*).
fork, Gabel, *f. w.*
form, Gestalt, *f. w.*
former, früher, vorig; der erstere, jener (§ 130, 1).
formerly, früher.
forsake, verlassen, *s.*
fortunate, glücklich.
fortunately, glücklicherweise, zum Glück.
fortune, Glück, *n. s.* (*no pl.*).
forty, vierzig.
forward, vorwärts.
fossil, Fossil, *n. mx.* (*pl.* -ien).
foundation, Grund, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü).
four, vier.
fourteen, vierzehn.
franc, Frank, *m. mx.*
frank, aufrichtig.
Frederick, Friedrich.
free, frei; — from, los (*acc.*).
freedom, Freiheit, *f. w.;* — of speech, Redefreiheit.
free-trade, Handelsfreiheit, *f.*
French, *adj.*, französisch.
French (language), Französisch.
frequent, häufig.
fresh, frisch.
Friday, Freitag, *m. s. 2.*
friend, Freund, *m. s. 2;* Freundin, *f. w.;* — of the workingmen (people), Volksfreund.
friendly, freundlich.

friendship, Freundschaft, *f. w.*
fro, to and —, hin und her.
frog, Frosch, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ö).
from, von (*dat.*); = out of, aus (*dat.*), from it *or* that, davon.
fruit, Frucht, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ü); (*collect.*) Obst, *n. s.* (*no pl.*).
fulfill, erfüllen, *w.*
full, voll.
fully, vollends.
further, weiter.
furthermore, übrigens.
future, Zukunft, *f.* (*no pl.*).
future, *adj.*, künftig.

gain, gewinnen, *s.*
gallery, Gallerie, *f. w.*; picture —, Bildergallerie.
garden, Garten, *m. s. 1* (*pl.* ä).
gardener, Gärtner, *m. s. 1.*
gate, Thor, *n. s. 2*; garden —, Gartenthor.
gather, sammeln, versammeln, *w.*
gayety, Heiterkeit, *f.* (*no pl.*).
general, allgemein; in —, überhaupt.
generous, freigebig.
genius, Genie, *n. s.* (*pl.* =s).
gentle, sanft.
gentleman, Herr, *m. w.* (§ 94, 1).
genuine, wahr.
German, *adj.*, deutsch.
German (language), Deutsch, *n.*, das Deutsche (§ 290, 1).
Germany, Deutschland, *n.*
get, (obtain) bekommen, *s.*; (fetch) holen, *w.*; (= become) werden, *s.* (*aux.* sein); — into (a state or condition), geraten in, *s.* (*aux.* sein); where did you — that, woher haben Sie das?
get, — up (rise), aufstehen, *s.* (§ 185, *aux.* sein).
ghost, Geist, *m. s. 3*; Gespenst, *n. s. 3.*
girl, Mädchen, *n. s. 1*; —s' school, Mädchenschule, Töchterschule, *f. w.*
give, geben, *s.*; (present) schenken, *w.*; — back, zurückgeben; to — one headache, einem Kopfweh machen.
glad, froh; to be —, sich freuen, *refl. w.*; I am — to hear that, ich höre das gern.
gladly, gern.
glance, Blick, *m. s. 2.*
glass, Glas, *n. s. 3.*
glisten, glänzen, *w.*
glitter, glänzen, *w.*
glorious, herrlich.
glove, Handschuh, *m. s. 2.*
go, gehen, *s. irr.* (§ 185) (*aux.* sein); (in any conveyance) fahren, *s.* (*aux.* sein); — walking, spazieren gehen; — driving, spazieren fahren; — against, entgegengehen; — into (enter upon), sich einlassen (auf, *acc.*); — out (there), hinausgehen; — over, hinübergehen; I am going, ich gehe; it is going to rain, es wird regnen.
goal, Ziel, *n. s. 2.*
God, Gott, *m. s.*; gods = Götter.
gold, Gold, *n. s.* (*no pl.*); — piece, Goldstück, *n. s. 2.*
golden, golden.
good, gut; (well-behaved) artig; — evening, guten Abend.
good-bye, auf Wiedersehen!
good-for-nothing, Taugenichts, *m.* (*indcl.*).
goodness, Güte, *f. w.*
goods, Gut, *n. s. 3.*
governess, Hauslehrerin, *f. w.*
governor, Vogt, Landvogt, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ö).
gradual, allmählich.
grammar, Grammatik, *f. w.*
grand, herrlich; (= large) groß.
grandmother, Großmutter, *f. s. 1* (*pl.* ü).
grant, gewähren, *w.*
grasp, fassen, *w.*; greifen, *s.*
grass, Gras, *n. s. 3.*
grateful, dankbar.
gratitude, Dankbarkeit.
grave, schwer.
gray, grau; turn —, ergrauen, *w.* (*aux.* sein.).
great, groß.
Greek, Grieche, *m. w.*
Greek (language), Griechisch, *n.*
Greek, *adj.*, griechisch.
green, grün.
greet, grüßen, *w.*
greeting, Gruß, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* =üße).
grief, Schmerz, *m. mx.*
grieve, schmerzen, *w.*
ground, Boden, *m. s. 1* (*pl.* ö); (= reason) Grund, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü).

grow, wachsen, *s.* (*aux.* sein); (= become) werden, *s.* (*aux.* sein); — up, aufwachsen, *s.* (*aux.* sein).
guard, Wache, *f. w.*
guard, be on one's —, sich hüten, *refl. w.* (against = vor, *dat.*).
guess, raten, *s.;* (infer) schließen, *s.*
guest, Gast, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
guide, Führer, *m. s. 1.*
guilt, Schuld, *f. w.*
guilty, schuldig.
gunpowder, Schießpulver, *n. s. 1.*
gymnasium (a preparatory school), Gymnasium, *n. mx.* (*pl.* -ien); — suit (for gymnastic exercises), Turnanzug, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü).

habit, Sitte, *f. w.*
habitation, Wohnung, *f. w.*
hail! heil!
hair, Haar, *n. s. 2.*
half, halb; Hälfte, *f. w.;* the first —, die erste Hälfte; — past nine, halb zehn; two and a half, zwei und ein halb, *or* brittehalb; one and a half, anderthalb.
hall, Saal, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* Säle); concert —, Konzertsaal.
ham, Schinken, *m. s. 1.*
hammock, Hängematte, *f. w.*
hand, Hand, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ä); right at —, gleich in der Nähe.
hand, *v.*, reichen, *w.*
handsome, schön.
hang, *intr.* hangen, *s.*
happen, geschehen, *s.* (*aux.* sein); sich zutragen, *refl. s.;* as it happened, *adv. phrase*, zufälligerweise.
happiness, Glück, *n. s.* (*no pl.*).
happy, froh, glücklich.
harbor, Hafen, *m. s. 1* (*pl.* ä).
hard, schwer.
hardly, kaum, schwerlich.
harm, Schade, *m. mx.* (*gen.* -ns, *pl.* Schäden); do —, schaden, *w.*
harsh, rauh.
Harz Mts., Harzgebirge, *n. s. 1.*
haste, Eile, *f.* (*no pl.*).
hasten, eilen, *w.;* sich beeilen, *refl. w.*
hast'ly, flüchtig.
hat, Hut, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü).
have, haben, *w. irr.* (§ 171); to — to, müssen (§§ 189–191); to — *done, thun lassen* (§ 366, 1, *a*).
he, er.
head, Kopf, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ö); Haupt, *n. s. 3.*
headache, Kopfschmerz, *m. mx.*, Kopfweh, *n. s.* (*no pl.*).
health, Gesundheit, *f. w.*
healthy, gesund.
hear, hören, *w.;* vernehmen, *s.*
heart, Herz, *n. mx.* (§ 97, 2, *a*); by —, auswendig.
hearth, Herd, *m. s. 2.*
hearty, herzlich.
heaven, Himmel, *m. s. 1.*
heavy, schwer; — rain, starker Regen.
heed, achten, beachten, *w.* (§ 396, 1).
height, Höhe, *f. w.*
hell, Hölle, *f. w.*
help, helfen, *s.* (*dat.*).
help, Hilfe, *f. w.*
helpful, behilflich (to = *dat.*).
henceforth, fortan.
her, *acc.* sie; *dat.* ihr; *poss.* ihr.
here, hier; — below, hienieden; (= hither) hierher.
hereafter, fortan.
herewith, hiermit.
hero, Held, *m. w.*
heroine, Heldin, *f. w.*
hide, verbergen, *s.*
high, hoch (§ 109, 1); — wind, starker Wind.
Highness, (title) Hoheit, *f. w.*
hill, Hügel, *m. s. 1.*
him, *acc.* ihn; *dat.* ihm.
himself, *emphatic*, selbst; *refl.*, sich.
hinder, hindern, verhindern, *w.*
hindrance, Hindernis, *n. s. 2.*
hire, Miete, *f. w.*
his, sein.
historical, geschichtlich, historisch.
history, Geschichte, *f. w.*
hit, — upon, treffen, *s.*
hither, her, hierher.
hold, halten, *s.;* — back, zurückhalten.
hole, Loch, *n. s. 3.*
holiday, Feiertag, *m. s. 2;* —s (*collect.*), Ferien, *pl.*
holy, heilig.
home, Heimat, *f. w.;* *adv.*, nach Hause; = at home, zu Hause.
home-land, Heimat, *f.*
honest, redlich.
honesty, Redlichkeit, *f. w.*

honor, Ehre, *f w.;* man of —, Ehrenmann.
honor, *v.*, ehren, *w.*
honorable, ehrlich; (bringing honor) ehrenvoll.
hope, Hoffnung, *f. w.*
hope, *v.*, hoffen, *w.*
horror, Entsetzen, *n. s.* (*no pl.*).
horse, Pferd, *n. s. 2.*
host, Wirt, *m. s. 2.*
hostile, feind (to = *dat.*).
hot, heiß.
hour, Stunde, *f. w.*
house, Haus, *n. s. 3;* little —, Häuschen, *n. s. 1;* at the — of, bei (*dat.*).
how, wie; — about? wie verhält es sich mit?
however, indessen.
howl, heulen, *w.*
human, menschlich; — life, Menschenleben, *n. s. 1.*
human being, Mensch, *m. w.*
hundred, hundert; a — times, hundertmal.
hungry, hungrig.
hunter, Jäger, *m. s. 1.*
hurry, eilen, *w.;* sich beeilen, *refl. w.*
husband, Mann, *m. s. 3.*

I, ich.
idea, Gedanke, *m. mx.* (*gen.* -ns); Begriff, *m. s. 2.*
idle, (lazy) faul; (inactive) müßig.
idleness, Faulheit, *f. w.*
if, wenn, *sub. conj.;* = whether, ob, *subj. conj.;* as —, als ob, als wenn (§ 359, 3).
ignite, anzünden, *w.*
ill, krank; (= evil), böse.
illness, Krankheit, *f. w.*
imagine, *tr.*, denken, *w. irr.* (§ 330).
immense, kolossal.
immortal, unsterblich.
impart, mitteilen, *w.*
impatience, Ungeduld, *f.*
impatient, ungeduldig.
imperial, kaiserlich.
import, (meaning) Inhalt, *m. s.* (*no pl.*).
importance, Wichtigkeit, *f. w.*
important, wichtig.
impossible, unmöglich.
impression, Eindruck, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü).
improve, verbessern, *w.*
in, in (*dat. and acc.*); — the country, auf dem Lande; — the evening, am Abend; — order to, um zu, *with inf.;* — it, darin; — there, drinnen; — view of, bei, nach (*dat.*); — other words, mit andern Worten.
inclined, geneigt, *pple.*
increase, Zuschuß, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü).
indebted, schuldig (to = *dat.*).
indeed, in der That, allerdings, zwar; yes —, ja wohl, *or* jawohl.
indisposed, unwohl.
indistinct(ly), undeutlich.
industrious, fleißig.
industry, Fleiß, *m. s.* (*no pl.*).
infer, schließen, *s.*
influence, Einfluß, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü).
inform, — of, mitteilen.
information, Bericht, *m. s. 2.*
inhabit, bewohnen, *w.*
inhabitant, Bewohner, *m. s. 1.*
injury, Schade, *m. mx.* (*pl.* Schäden).
injustice, Unrecht, *n. s. 2.*
ink, Tinte, *f. w.*
inn, Gasthaus, Wirtshaus, *n. s. 2.*
innkeeper, Wirt, *m. s. 2.*
innocence, Unschuld, *f.* (*no pl.*).
inside, drinnen.
insight, Einsicht, *f. w.*
insignificant, unbedeutend.
inspect, durchmustern, *w.*
instance, Beispiel, *n. s. 2;* for —, zum Beispiel.
instantly, augenblicks.
instead of, anstatt (*gen.*).
instruct, unterrichten.
instruction, Unterricht, *m. s.* (*no pl.*).
instructive, lehrreich.
intelligence, Geist, *m. s. 3;* Verstand, *m. s.* (*no pl.*).
intend, (*trans.* = destine) bestimmen, *w.;* (purpose) vorhaben, *w. irr.* (§ 171), planen, *w.*; (*intrans.* = purpose) gedenken, *w. irr.* (§ 330).
interest, Interesse, *n. mx.;* object of —, Sehenswürdigkeit, *f. w.*
interest, *v.*, interessieren, *w.;* — one's self in, sich annehmen, *s.* (*gen.*).
interesting, interessant.

interrupt, unterbrechen, *s.*
intimate, näher.
into, in (*acc.*).
intolerable, unerträglich.
invent, erfinden, *s.*; — falsely, erlügen, *s.*
invention, Erfindung, *f. w.*
investigate, untersuchen, *w.*
invitation, Einladung, *f. w.*
invite, einladen, *s.*
involve, gelten, *s.*
iron, Eisen, *n. s. 1.*
is, ist; is going, geht (cf. p. 34, n. 5); he is going to make, er macht (cf. p. 62, n. 5).
island, Insel, *f. w.*
it, es; translate by forms of er or sie when referring to masc. or fem. noun (§ 122, 1).
Italian, *adj.*, italienisch.

January, Januar, *m. s. 2.*
jest, Spaß, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
jesting, Scherz, *m. s. 2.*
joke, Spaß, *m s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
jolly, lustig.
journey, Reise, Fahrt, *f. w.*
joy, Freude, *f. w.*
judge, *v.*, richten, *w.*
July, Juli, *m. s.* (*no pl.*).
jump, springen, *s.* (*aux.* sein).
June, Juni, *m. s.* (*no pl.*).
just, *adv.* (= only) nur, einmal; (= exactly) gerade; — ask, fragen Sie nur; *of time*, eben; — now, eben jetzt, soeben; just as . . . as, ebenso . . . als.

keep, (= retain) behalten, *s.*; to — awake, wach bleiben, *s.* (*aux.* sein); — one's word, Wort halten, *s.*; keep (doing), immerfort (thun).
key, Schlüssel, *m. s. 1.*
kill, töten, *w.*; umbringen, *w. irr.* (§ 330); erschlagen, *s.*
kind, Art, *f. w.*; what — of, was für (§ 145).
kind, freundlich.
kindness, Güte, *f. w.*
king, König, *m. s. 2.*
kitchen, Küche, *f. w.*
knee, Knie, *n. s. 1.*
knife, Messer, *n. s. 1.*
knight, Ritter, *m. s. 1.*
knew, I —, he —, ich, er wußte.
knock, klopfen.
know, = to be acquainted with, kennen, *w. irr.* (§ 330); in other cases, wissen, *irr.* (§ 190).
knowledge, Kenntnis, *f. s. 2*; Wissen, *n. s.* (*no pl.*); to my —, meines Wissens.
known, bekannt; it is —, man weiß; as is well —, bekanntermaßen.

labor, Arbeit, *f. w.*
lack, be —ing, fehlen, *w.* (*impers. with dat.*); (= do without) entbehren, *w.* (*gen.*).
lack, Mangel, *m. s. 1* (*pl.* ä).
lady, Dame, Frau, *f. w.*; young —, Fräulein, *n. s. 1.*
lake, See, *m. mx.*
land, Land, *n. s. 2–3* (p. 46, n. 10).
landlady, Wirtin, *f. w.*
landlord, Wirt, *m. s. 2.*
language, Sprache, *f. w.*; — lesson, Sprachstunde, *f. w.*; — study, Sprachstudium, *n. mx.*; — of flowers, Blumensprache.
large, groß (§ 114, 3).
last, letzt, vorig; the — days, die letzten Tage; — year, voriges Jahr; — evening, gestern abend; at —, endlich.
last, (continue) dauern, *w.*; (exist) bestehen, *s. irr.* (§ 185).
late, spät; at the latest, spätestens; of —, in der letzten Zeit; latest news, neueste Nachrichten.
lately, kürzlich, neulich.
Latin, Latein, *n.*
Latin, *adj.*, lateinisch.
latter, der letztere, dieser (§ 130, 1).
laugh, lachen, *w.*
law, Gesetz, *n. s. 2.*
lawyer, Advokat, *m. w.*
lay, legen, *w.*
laziness, Faulheit, *f. w.*
lazy, faul.
lead, führen, *w.*
lead-pencil, Bleistift, *m. s. 2.*
leaf, Blatt, *n. s. 3.*
league, Bund, *m. s. 2.* (*pl.* ü).
learn, lernen, *w.*; (= ascertain) erfahren, *s.*
learnéd, gelehrt, *ppl. adj.*

least, am wenigsten; at —, wenigstens, mindestens.
leave, verlassen, *s.*; — for, abreisen nach, *w.* (*aux.* sein).
left, — hand, link; (= remaining), übrig.
legend, Sage, *f. w.*
lend, leihen, *s.*; — a hand, die Hände reichen, *w.*
length, Länge, *f. w.*
lesson, Lektion, *f. w.*
let, lassen, *s.*; *often translated by subj.*; — him have, habe er; — us go, gehen wir.
letter, Brief, *m. s. 2*; — carrier, Briefträger, *m. s. 1.*
liberal, freigebig.
liberty, Freiheit, *f. w.*
library, Bibliothek, *f. w.*
lie (be situated), liegen, *s.*
lie (speak falsely), lügen, *s.*
life, Leben, *n. s. 1*; city —, Stadtleben; live a —, ein Leben führen.
lift, heben, *s.*
light, Licht, *n. s. 3*; northern —s, Nordlicht.
light, *adj.* (easy, not heavy) leicht; (not dark) hell; make — of, spotten (*gen.*).
light, *v.*, anzünden, anstecken, *w.*
lightning, Blitz, *m. s. 2.*
like, *adj.*, gleich; the —, dergleichen; *adv.*, wie.
like, *v.*, gern haben, lieb haben, *w. irr.*; mögen (§§ 189, 191, 3); I should — company, ich hätte gern Gesellschaft; to — to do, gern thun; to — best, am liebsten haben.
likewise, gleichfalls.
limit, einschränken, *w.*
linden (tree), Linde, *f. w.*
line, Zeile, *f. w.*
literature, Litteratur, *f. w.*
little, *often to be translated by a diminutive in* chen *or* lein; (of size) klein; (of quantity) wenig; a —, ein wenig, ein bißchen; the — ones, die Kleinen.
live, leben, *w.*; (= dwell, reside) wohnen, *w.*
lively, lebhaft.
location, Lage, *f. w.*
lock, verschließen, *s.*
lofty, hoch.
London, London; *adj.*, Londoner (§ 109, 2); — weather, Londoner Wetter.
long, *adj.*, lang; *as adv.*, lang(e).
long, *v.*, sich sehnen, *refl. w.* (for = nach, *dat.*).
longer, no —, nicht mehr.
look — for, suchen, *w.*; — at, besehen, *s.*, betrachten, *w.*; — forward to, entgegensehen, *s.* (*dat.*); — on, schauen, *w.*; — into, schauen in (*acc.*); = seem, appear, aussehen, *s.*
look (= glance), Blick, *m. s. 2.*
Lord, Herr, *m. w.*
lose, verlieren, *s.*; — one's way, sich verirren, *refl. w.*
lost, verloren, *ppl. adj.*; to be —, get —, verloren gehen.
lot, fall to the — of, zu teil werden (*dat. of pers.*).
Louis, Ludwig.
lounge, Sofa, *n. s.* (*pl.* -s).
love, lieben, *w.*
love, Liebe, *f. w.*; in — with, verliebt in (*acc.*); — scene, Liebesscene, *f. w.*
lovely, (beautiful) schön; (amiable) lieblich, liebenswürdig.
low, niedrig; (of the voice) leise.
lower, *adj.*, unter.
luck, Glück, *n. s.* (*no pl.*).
luckily, zum Glück, glücklicherweise.
lucky, glücklich.

mad, toll.
madam, Madame (*Fr.*), gnädige Frau.
maid, — servant, Magd, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
mail, Post, *f. w.*
main, (in compounds) Haupt-; Main Street, Hauptstraße.
majesty, Majestät, *f. w.*
majority, Mehrheit, *f. w.*
make, machen; to — the acquaintance of, kennen lernen, *w.*
man, Mann, *m. s. 3*; (= human being) Mensch, *m. w.*; man-of-the-house, Wirt, *m. s. 2*; Hausherr, *m. w.*; man-teacher, Lehrer, *m. s. 1.*
mankind, Menschen, *w. pl.*
man-of-war, Kriegsschiff, *n. s. 2.*

manifold, mannigfaltig.
manner, Weise, *f. w.*
many, viele, manche; — a, manch (§ 157).
mark, Mark, *f. w.*
marriage, Heirat, *f. w.*
marvellous, wunderbar.
mass, Menge, *f. w.*
master, Meister, *m. s. 1;* Herr, *m. w.* (§ 94, 1); — work, Meisterwerk, *n. s. 2.*
mathematics, Mathematik, *f.*
matter, Sache, *f. w.;* — of business, Geschäftssache; small —, Kleinigkeit, *f. w.;* in the — of, in betreff, *with gen.;* it is a — of, es gilt (*from* gelten); what is the — with her? was ist ihr? was fehlt ihr? no —, gleichviel.
may, mögen, dürfen (§§ 189–191).
May, Mai, *m. s. 2.*
me, *acc.* mich; *dat.* mir.
meal, Mahlzeit, *f. w.*
mean, meinen, *w.;* bedeuten, *w.;* I —, ich meine; the word —s, das Wort bedeutet.
means, by no —, keineswegs.
meanwhile, indessen.
meat, Fleisch, *n. s.* (*no pl.*).
medicine, (drugs) Arznei, *f. w.;* (the science) Medizin, *f. w.*
meet, treffen, *s.;* begegnen, *w.* (*aux.* sein, cf. § 323, 1, *d*, *dat.*).
meeting, Versammlung, *f. w.*
merchant, Kaufmann, *m. s. 3* (§ 238, 2, *a*).
mere(ly), bloß.
messenger, Bote, *m. w.*
method, Methode, *f. w.*
middle, mittel (§ 103, 2); of — age, mittleren Alters.
Middle Ages, Mittelalter, *n. s.* (*no pl.*).
mighty, mächtig.
mild, mild.
mile, Meile, *f. w.*
milk, Milch, *f.* (*no pl.*).
mind, Sinn, *m. s. 2.*
mindful, gedenk (of = *gen.*).
mineral, Mineral, *n. mx.* (*pl.* -ien).
minute, Minute, *f. w.*
mirror, Spiegel, *m. s. 1.*
miserable, elend.
misfortune, Unglück, *n. s.* (*no pl.*).
missing, fehlend; be —, fehlen, *w.*
mist, Nebel, *m. s. 1.*
mistake, Fehler, *m. s. 1;* Irrtum, *m. s. 3.*
mistaken, be —, sich irren, *w.*
modern, *comp. of* neu.
moment, Augenblick, *m. s. 2.*
Monday, Montag, *m. s. 2.*
money, Geld, *n. s. 3.*
monk, Mönch, *m. s. 2.*
monkey, Affe, *m. w.*
month, Monat, *m. s. 2.*
monthly (periodical), Monatsschrift, *f. w.*
monument, Denkmal, *n. s. 2–3.*
mood, Stimmung, *f. w.*
moon, Mond, *m. s. 2.*
moonlight, Mond[en]schein, *m. s.* (*no pl.*).
moonlight, *adj.*, mondhell.
moral, sittlich, moralisch.
more, *comp.* (§§ 111–114); mehr (§ 158); the —, the, je mehr, desto; *with numerals*, noch; one more book, noch ein Buch.
moreover, übrigens.
morning, Morgen, *m. s. 1;* —light, Morgenlicht, *n. s. 3;* good —, guten Morgen; this —, heute morgen; to-morrow —, morgen früh; — breeze, Morgenluft, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ü).
morrow, to-morrow, morgen, *adv.;* day after —, übermorgen.
most, *superl.* (§§ 111–114); a — interesting city, eine höchst (or äußerst) interessante Stadt; at the —, höchstens.
mostly, meistens.
mother, Mutter, *f. s. 1* (*pl.* ü).
motion, Bewegung, *f. w.*
mount, steigen, *s.* (*aux.* sein).
mountain, Berg, *m. s. 2;* 'mountains' = mountain-range, or mountain-country, Gebirge, *n. s. 1.*
mouth, Mund, *m. s.* (*2–3*).
much, viel.
multitude, Menge, *f. w.*
museum, Museum, *n. mx.* (*pl.* Museen).
music, Musik, *f. w.;* — lesson, Musikstunde, *f. w.*
must, müssen (§§ 189–191); — not (in prohibitions), nicht dürfen.

my, mein; see, however, p. 28, n. 5.
myself, *emphatic*, selbst; *refl.*, *acc.* mich, *dat.* mir.
mystery, Geheimnis, *n. s. 2.*

name, Name, *m. mx.* (*gen.* -ns); by — of, Namens.
name, *v.*, nennen, *w. irr.* (§ 330); (= appoint), ernennen.
namely, nämlich.
narrative, Erzählung, *f. w.*
narrow, eng.
nation, Volk, *n. s. 3*; Nation, *f. w.*
native, — country *or* land, Vaterland, *n. s.*; Heimat, *f. w.*
natural, natürlich; — curiosities, Naturalien, *pl.*; — science, Naturwissenschaft, *f. w.*
naturally, natürlich.
nature, Natur, *f. w.*
near, nah (§114, 2); in der Nähe von.
nearly, fast, beinahe.
neat, nett.
necessary, nötig, notwendig (to = *dat.*).
neck, Hals, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
need, (distress) Not, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ö); (necessity) Bedürfnis, *n. s. 2*; case of —, Notfall, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
need, *v.*, brauchen, *w.*; bedürfen, *w. irr.* (*gen.*).
negative, answer in the —, verneinen, *w.*
neglect, vernachlässigen, *w.*
neighbor, Nachbar, *m. mx.*
neither, *pron.*, keiner (-er, -es); *conj.*, neither . . . nor, weder . . . noch.
nephew, Neffe, *m. w.*
nest, Nest, *n. s. 3.*
never, nie, niemals.
nevertheless, jedoch, trotzdem, nichtsdestoweniger.
new, neu.
news, Nachricht, *f. w.* (*usually in pl.*); what's the —? was giebt's Neues?
newspaper, Zeitung, *f. w.*
next, nächst (§ 114, 2), künftig; *adv.*, weiter.
nice, hübsch, nett.
nickname, Spitzname, *m. mx.* (*gen.* -ns).
night, Nacht, *f s. 2* (*pl.* ä); in the —, des Nachts.
nightingale, Nachtigall, *f. w.*
nine, neun.
ninety, neunzig.
No., at —, Numero, *m.* (*indcl.*).
no, *adj.*, kein; *neg. adv.*, nein; — worse, nicht schlechter; once and — more, einmal und nicht wieder; — doubt one needs a long time, man braucht wohl eine lange Zeit.
no one, niemand.
noble, edel.
nobleman, Edelmann, *m. s. 3* (§ 238, 2, *a*).
none, kein; — but, lauter.
nonsense, Unsinn, *m. s.* (*no pl.*).
noon, Mittag, *m. s. 2.*
nor, noch; — I either, ich auch nicht.
north, Norden, *m. s. 1.*
northern lights, Nordlicht, *n. s. 3.*
nose, Nase, *f. w.*
not, nicht; — a, kein.
notably, bedeutend.
note, Notiz, *f. w.*
note, merken, *w.*
nothing, nichts.
notice, merken, bemerken.
novel, Roman, *m. s. 2.*
now, nun, jetzt (§ 380, 1, *f*); — and then, dann und wann; — here is something, hier ist nun etwas; — guess, raten Sie einmal, *or* nun einmal.
nowadays, heutzutage.
number, Anzahl, *f.* (*no pl.*); (= great —) Menge, *f. w.*
Number, at —, Numero, *m.* (*indcl.*).
numerous, zahlreich.
nut, Nuß, *f. s.* (*pl.* Nüsse).

obedience, Gehorsam, *m. s.* (*no pl.*).
obey, gehorchen, *w.* (*dat.*).
object, Zweck, *m. s. 2*; — of interest, Sehenswürdigkeit, *f. w.*
obliged, be — to, müssen (§§ 189–191).
obtain, bekommen, *s.*
occupant, Bewohner, *m. s. 1.*
occupy, (take possession of, fill) besetzen, *w.*; (busy) beschäftigen, *w.*
occur, vorkommen, *s.* (*aux.* sein); — to, einfallen, *s.* (*dat. of pers.*).
ocean, See, *f. w.*; — voyage, Seereise, *f. w.*, Seefahrt, *f. w.*
of, *usually translated by genitive;*

von (*dat.*), *especially before proper names or where the case would not otherwise be clear;* a majority of 200 votes, eine Mehrheit von 200 Stimmen; a quantity — minerals, eine Menge Mineralien (§ 246, 1, *a*); — course, natürlich; — it *or* that, davon.
offer, (tender to a person) bieten, anbieten, *s.;* (present) darbieten.
office, Amt, *n. s. 3.*
often, oft, häufig.
oh, o, ach; — that's it! ach so!
old, alt.
olden, älter.
Olympus, Olymp, *m. s.*
on, an (*dat. and acc.*); auf (*dat. and acc.*); — the river (of a boat), auf dem Flusse; (of a house, city, *etc.*), an dem Flusse; — the side, auf der Seite; — the study (= concerning), über das Studium; — your head, auf dem Kopfe; — the first of May, am ersten Mai; — business of state, in Staatsgeschäften; — account of, wegen (*gen.*); — my account, meinetwegen.
once, (= one time) ein'mal; (= just, pray, once upon a time) einmal'; (= some time) einst; — more, wieder, nochmals; at — (= immediately) sofort, sogleich; all at — (= suddenly), auf einmal.
one, *adj.*, ein; *indef. pron.*, man, einer (§§ 149. 156).
only, *adj.*, einzig; *adv.*, nur, bloß, allein; (of time) erst.
open, *adj.*, offen.
open, *verb*, öffnen, *w.*
opera, Oper, *f. w.*
opinion, Ansicht, Meinung, *f. w.*
opponent, Gegner, *m. s. 1.*
opportunity, Gelegenheit, *f. w.*
opposite, gegenüber (*dat., usually follows governed word*).
oppression, Drang, *m. s.* (*no pl.*).
or, oder.
order, in — to, um zu, *with inf.*
ordinary, (= common) gemein; (= usual) gewöhnlich.
origin, Ursprung, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü).
other, ander; each —, einander (*indcl.*).
otherwise, (= differently) anders; (= else) sonst.
ought, I —, ich sollte, ich hätte sollen (§§, 189–191).
our, unser.
out, — of, aus (*dat.*); — there, draußen.
outrageous, unverschämt.
outside, draußen.
over, *prep.*, über (*dat. and acc.*); *adv.*, (= past) vorüber; — night, die Nacht über; — yonder, drüben, dort drüben.
over, *adj.* (= left, remaining) übrig.
owe, schuldig sein (*dat. of pers.*)
own, eigen.
owner, Eigentümer, *m. s. 1.*
ownership, Eigentum, *n. s. 3;* Eigentumsrecht, *n. s. 2.*

page, Seite, *f. w.*
pain, Schmerz, *m. mx.;* Pein, *f.* (*no pl.*).
pain, *verb*, schmerzen, *w.*
pains, Mühe, *f. w.*
painter, Maler, *m. s. 1.*
painting, (picture) Gemälde, *n. s. 1;* (the art of —) Malerei, *f.*
pair, Paar, *n. s. 2.*
palace, Palast, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä); Schloß, *n. s. 3.*
pale, bleich.
paper, Papier, *n. s. 2;* (= newspaper) Zeitung, *f. w.*
pardon, verzeihen, *s.* (*dat. of pers.*).
parents, Eltern, *pl. only.*
park, Park, *m. s. 2* (*pl. also* Parks).
part, Teil, *m. s. 2;* (= share), *n. s. 2;* (= rôle) Rolle, *f. w.*
particularly, besonders.
partly, teils.
pass, *intr.* (away), vergehen, *s. irr.* (§ 185, *aux.* sein); — by, vorbeigehen; *tr.* (of time, = spend) verbringen, zubringen, *w. irr.* (§ 330).
passage (in a book), Stelle, *f. w.*
past, *adv.*, vorüber; half — nine, halb zehn.
pastor, Pastor, *m. mx.*
path, Pfad, *m. s. 2.*
patience, Geduld, *f.* (*no pl.*).
pause, Pause, *f. w.*
pay, Lohn, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ö).

pay, *verb*, bezahlen, *w.*
peace, Friede, *m. mx.* (*gen.* -ns).
peak, Gipfel, *m. s. 1.*
peasant, Bauer, *m. mx.*
peculiar, sonderbar.
pen, Feder, *f. w.*; — drawing, Federzeichnung, *f. w.*
penalty, Strafe, *f. w.*
pencil, Bleistift, *m. s. 2.*
penny, Pfennig, *m. s. 2.*
people, (= persons) Leute, *pl. only*; Menschen, *w. pl.*; (= nation) Volk, *n. s. 3*; —live, die Leute leben.
per cent, Prozent, *n. s. 2.*
perfect, vollkommen.
perform (a task), lösen, *w.*
performance, Vorstellung, *f. w.*
perhaps, vielleicht; — I ought to, ich sollte wohl.
perilous, gefährlich.
perish, untergehen, *s. irr.* (§ 185, *aux.* sein).
permit, erlauben, *w.* (*dat. of pers.*).
permitted, be —, dürfen (§§ 189–191).
person, Person, *f. w.*
pfennig, Pfennig, *m. s. 2.*
philosophy, Philosophie, *f. w.*
photograph, Photographie, *f. w*
physician, Arzt, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
piano, Klavier, *n. s. 2*; — lesson, Klavierstunde, *f. w.*
picture, Bild, *n. s. 3*; — gallery, Bildergallerie, *f. w.*; — book, Bilderbuch, *n. s 3*; (illustration) Abbildung, *f. w.*
pick, brechen, *s.*
piece, Stück, *n. s. 2.*
piece-of-luck, Glück, *n. s.* (*no pl.*).
pious, fromm.
pipe, Pfeife, *f. w.*
pithy, kräftig.
pity, it is a —, es ist schade.
pity, *verb*, bedauern; sich erbarmen (*with gen.*).
place, Platz, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä); Stelle, *f. w.*; Stätte, *f. w.*; (town) Ort, *m. s. 2–3*; — of interest, Sehenswürdigkeit, *f. w.*; in the first —, erstens.
place, take —, stattfinden, *s.*
plain, Ebene, *f. w.*
plain, *adj.* (= evident) offenbar; (= distinct) deutlich.
plan, Plan, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
plan, *verb*, entwerfen, *s.*; Pläne machen.
plate, Teller, *m. s. 1.*
play, *verb*, spielen, *w.*
play, (= game) Spiel, *n. s. 2*; (= drama) Drama, *n. mx.*; Stück, *n. s. 2.*
playmate, Spielkamerad, *m. w.*
pleasant, angenehm.
please, gefallen, *s.* (*dat.*); = if you please, (ich) bitte.
pleasure, Freude, *f. w.*; Vergnügen, *n. s. 1*; take — in, sich ergötzen an (*dat.*).
plentiful, reichlich.
plenty, Fülle, *f. w.*
plumbing, Wasserleitung, *f. w.*
pocket, Tasche, *f. w.*; — money, Taschengeld, *n. s. 3.*
poem, Gedicht, *n. s. 2.*
poet, Dichter, *m. s. 1.*
poetic, poetisch.
poetry, Dichtung, *f. w.*; Dichtkunst, *f. s.* (*no pl.*).
point, Punkt, *m. s. 2*; (= sharp —) Spitze, *f. w.*; it is on the — of striking, es will eben schlagen; — of view, Gesichtspunkt.
point (to), deuten (auf, *acc.*), *w.*
police, Polizei, *f. w.*
policeman, Polizist, *m. w.*
polite, höflich.
politeness, Höflichkeit, *f. w.*
political, politisch.
politics, Politik, *f. w.*
poodle, Pudel, *m. s. 1.*
poor, arm; (= bad, inferior) schlecht.
position, (location) Lage, *f. w.*; (employment) Stellung, *f. w.*
possess, besitzen, *s.*
possession, take — of, sich bemächtigen (*gen*).
possible, möglich.
post, (= mail) Post, *f. w.*
pound, Pfund, *n. s. 2.*
pour, gießen, *s.*
powder, Pulver, *n. s. 1.*
power, Kraft, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
powerful, kräftig, gewaltig.
practice, Übung, *f. w.*
practice, *verb*, üben, *w.*
praise, loben, *w.*

prank, Streich, *m. s. 2.*
pray, *interj.*, nur (p. 43, *n.* 14); — come along, kommen Sie nur mit; how old are you, —? wie alt sind Sie denn?
prefer, lieber haben, *w. irr.*; lieber mögen (§§ 189–191); vorziehen, *s.*
preparation, Vorbereitung, *f. w.*
preparatory, — school, Vorbereitungsschule, *f. w.*
present, (= gift) Geschenk, *n. s. 2.*
present, *verb*, schenken, *w.*
present, *adj.*, jetzig (from jetzt, now).
present, for the —, vorläufig.
preserve, erhalten, *s.*
president, Präsident, *m. w.*
presidential, — election, Präsidentenwahl, *f. w.*
press, Presse, *f. w.*; freedom of the —, Preßfreiheit, *f. w.*
press, *verb*, — in, eindringen in, *s.* (*aux.* sein).
presume, I —, wohl.
pretty, *adj.*, hübsch.
pretty, *adv.*, ziemlich.
prevent, hindern, verhindern.
prey, fall a — to, verfallen (to = *dat.*), *s.* (*aux.* sein).
price, Preis, *m. s. 2.*
prince, Prinz, *m. w.*
principal, Kapital, *n. s. 2.* (*pl. also* -ien).
principal, *adj.*, *in compounds* = Haupt-.
prisoner, Gefangene(r), *decl. like adj.* (cf. (§ 290, 2).
prize, Preis, *m. s. 2.*
probable, probably, wahrscheinlich; that is probably an invention, das mag wohl eine Erfindung sein.
professor, Professor, *m. mx.*
proficiency, Fertigkeit, *f. w.*
prologue, Prolog, *m. s. 2.*
promise, *verb*, versprechen, *s.*
promise, Versprechen, *n. s. 1.*
pronunciation, Aussprache, *f. w.*
proof, Beweis, *m. s. 2.*
prop, Stütze, *f. w.*
proper(ly), eigentlich.
property, (= possession) Eigentum, *n. s. 3*; (= wealth) Vermögen, *n. s. 1*; (= characteristic) Eigenschaft, *f. w.*
prophet, Prophet, *m. w.*
propose, vorschlagen, *s.*
prose, Prosa, *f.* (*no pl.*).
proud, stolz.
prove, beweisen, *s.*
proverb, Sprichwort, *n. s. 3.*
Prussia, Preußen.
public, Publikum *n. s.* (*no pl.*).
pulpit, Kanzel, *f. w.*
punish, bestrafen.
punishment, Strafe, *f. w.*
pupil, Schüler, *m. s. 1.*
purchase, Kauf, Einkauf, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* äu).
purpose, Zweck, *m. s. 2.*
purse, Beutel, *m. s. 1.*
put, (= set) setzen, *w.*; (= stick) stecken; to — up with (something), sich (etwas) gefallen lassen, *s.*

quaint, seltsam.
quality, Eigenschaft, *f. w.*
quantity, Menge, *f. w.* (§ 246, 1, *a*).
quarrel, Streit, *m. s. 2.*
quarter, Viertel, *n. s. 1*; (= 25 cents) Viertelbollar, *m. s.* (*pl.* -e); a — to 10, drei Viertel (auf) 10.
queen, Königin, *f. w.*
question, Frage, *f. w.*; it is a — of, es handelt sich um (*acc.*); in —, *adj. phrase*, betreffend, *ppl. adj.*
quick, schnell.
quiet, ruhig, still; (soft) sanft.
quite, ganz.

rail, (= railway) Eisenbahn, *f. w.*; by —, mit der Eisenbahn.
rain, *verb*, regnen, *w.*
rain, Regen, *m. s. 1*; —y day, Regentag, *m. s. 2.*
rainy, regnerisch.
range, Umfang, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
rapid, schnell.
rare, selten.
rate, at any —, jedenfalls, wenigstens.
rather, vielmehr; (= preferably) lieber.
ray, Strahl, *m. mx.*
reach, reichen; (= arrive at) erreichen, *w.*
read, lesen, *s.*
reader, Leser, *m. s. 1*; (= reading-book) Lesebuch, *n. s. 3.*

readily, leicht.
reading, Lektüre, *f. w.*; — book, Lesebuch, *n. s. 3.*
ready, (prepared) bereit; (finished) fertig.
real, wirklich, eigentlich, wahr.
really, wirklich, wahrhaft, eigentlich.
reason, Grund, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü); Ursache, *f. w.*
receive, bekommen, *s.*; erhalten, *s.*; (guests) empfangen, *s.*
recently, neulich.
recess, Pause, *f. w.*
recite, deklamieren, *w.*
reckon, rechnen, *w.* (on = auf, *acc.*).
recommend, empfehlen, *s.*
red, rot.
redound, gereichen, *w.* (to, zu).
reference, Bezug, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü); in — to, in Bezug auf (*acc.*).
reform, Reform, *f. w.*
regard, Betreff, *m. s.* (*no pl.*); Bezug, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü); Rücksicht, *f. w.*; in — to, in betreff, *or* betreffs (*with gen.*); in Bezug auf (*acc.*); mit Rücksicht auf (*acc.*), über (*acc.*).
regard, *verb*, halten für (cf. § 265, 3, *c*).
region, Gegend, *f. w.*
regret, Reue, *f. w.*
regret, *verb*, bereuen.
regular, regelmäßig; (= thorough) vollkommen.
rejoice, *trans.*, freuen, *w.*; *intrans.*, sich freuen, *refl. w.*
relate, erzählen, *w.*
related, be —, sich verhalten, *s.*
relation, Verhältnis, *n. s. 2.*
relative, Verwandte(r), *decl. like adj.* (cf. § 290, 2).
rely (upon), sich verlassen (auf, *acc.*), *refl. s.*
remain, bleiben, *s.* (*aux.* sein); (be left) übrig bleiben; 'I —' (at close of a letter) ich verbleibe.
remaining, übrig.
remark, bemerken, *w.*
remarkable, merkwürdig.
remember, sich erinnern, *refl. w.* (*with gen.*).
remind, erinnern, *w.* (of = an, *acc.*).
renounce, entsagen, *w.* (*dat.*).
rent, Miete, *f. w.*
repay, belohnen, *w.*
repeat, wiederholen, *w.*
repeatedly, wiederholt.
repentance, Reue, *f. w.*
reply, erwidern.
report, Bericht, *m. s. 2*; (= news) Nachricht, *f. w.*
report, *verb*, berichten, *w.*
represent, darstellen, *w.*
republic, Republik, *f. w.*
republican, Republikaner, *m. s. 1.*
repulsive, abstoßend, *ppl. adj.*
reputation, Ruhm, *m. s.* (*no pl.*).
request, *verb*, bitten, *s.*
request, Bitte, *f. w.*
require, verlangen, *w.*
rescue, retten, *w.*
resemble, gleichen, *s.* (*dat.*).
reserve, reservieren, *w.*
residence, Wohnung, *f. w.*
resolve, sich entschließen, *refl. s.*
respect, Betreff, *m. s.* (*no pl.*); Hinsicht, *f. w.*; in — to, in betreff (*with gen.*); in this —, in dieser Hinsicht.
rest, Ruhe, *f.* (*no pl.*).
rest, *verb*, ruhen, *w.*; — one's self, sich ausruhen, *refl. w.*
rest, the — (remainder), das übrige.
restless, unruhig.
result, Folge, *f. w.*
resume, wiederaufnehmen, *s.*
retain, behalten, *s.*
return, *verb*, wiederkehren, zurückkehren, *w.* (*aux.* sein).
return, Rückkehr, *f. w.*; (= way back) Rückweg, *m. s. 2*; —journey, Rückreise, *f. w.*
reward, Lohn, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ö).
reward, *verb*, belohnen, *w.*
rheumatism, Rheumatismus, *m. s.* (*no pl.*).
Rhine, Rhein, *m.*
ribbon, Band, *n. s. 3.*
rich, reich.
riches, Reichtum, *m. s. 3.*
rid of, los (*with acc.*).
riddle, Rätsel, *n. s. 1.*
ride, (in a conveyance) fahren, *s.* (*aux.* sein); (on horseback) reiten, *s.* (*aux.* sein, cf. § 323, 1, *c.*).
rider, Reiter, *m. s. 1.*
right, *adj.* (= proper) recht; (=

correct) richtig; right-hand, recht; to be —, recht haben; *adv.*, — before, gerade vor; — at, schon an; (= very) — good, recht gut.
right, Recht, *n. s. 2.*
rightly, mit Recht.
ring, Ring, *m. s. 2.*
ripe, reif.
rise, (= mount) steigen, *s.* (*aux.* sein); (= get up) aufstehen, *s. irr.* (§ 185 *aux.* sein); (of the sun) aufgehen, *s. irr.* (§ 185 *aux.* sein).
rise, (rising) Aufgang, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
risk, Gefahr, *f. w.*
river, Fluß, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* -üsse).
rob, rauben, *w.*; — of (*tr.*), berauben.
robber, Räuber, *m. s. 1.*
rock, Felsen, *m. s. 1* (§ 279, 2, *a*).
rock, *verb*, schaukeln, *w.*
rocking, — chair, Schaukelstuhl, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü); — horse, Schaukelpferd, *n. s. 2.*
rogue, Schelm, *m. s. 2.*
rôle, Rolle, *f. w.*
roll, (bread) Semmel, *f. w.*
Roman, römisch.
roof, Dach, *n. s. 3.*
room, (= space, place) Platz, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä); (apartment) Zimmer, *n. s. 1*; adjoining —, Nebenzimmer.
rose, Rose, *f. w.*
rough, rauh.
route, Reiseplan, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
row, Reihe, *f. w.*
row-boat, Kahn, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
royal, königlich.
ruin, verderben, *s.*
rule, Regel, *f. w.*; as a —, in der Regel.
rule, *verb*, herrschen, *w.*
rumor, Gerücht, *n. s. 2.*
run, (of motion) laufen, *s.*; — away, davonlaufen; — to meet, entgegenlaufen; (of water) rinnen, *s.* (all with *aux.* sein); (= purport) lauten, *w.*

sad, traurig.
saddle, Sattel, *f. w.*; — horse, Reitpferd, *n. s. 2.*
safe, sicher.
Saint, *(title)* der Heilige.
sake, for the — of, um . . . (*gen.*) . . . willen; for your —, um deinetwillen, um Ihretwillen (§§ 127, 306, 1).
salamander, Salamander, *m. s. 1.*
same, the —, derselbe (§ 134); just the —, gleichviel, *adv.*
sapling, Bäumchen, *n. s. 1.*
satisfied, zufrieden.
satisfy, befriedigen, *w.*
Saturday, Samstag, *m. s. 2*; Sonnabend, *m. s. 2.*
save (= rescue) retten; (of money) sparen, ersparen, *w.*; — up, aufsparen, *w.*
saving, sparsam.
savior, Retter, *m. s. 1.*
say, sagen, *w.*; *often to be translated by a form of* sollen (§ 191, 5); that is to —, nämlich, *adv.*
saying, Spruch, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü).
scamp, Schelm, *m. s. 2.*
scarcely, kaum, schwerlich.
scene, (of a drama) Scene, *f. w.*; (place of occurrence) Schauplatz, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
scholar, (pupil) Schüler, *m. s. 1*; (learned man) Gelehrte(r), *decl. like adj.* (cf. § 290, 2).
school, Schule, *f. w.*; — building, Schulgebäude, *n. s. 1*; — director, Schuldirektor, *m. mx.*; — year, Schuljahr, *n. s. 2.*
schoolmate, Schulkamerad, *m. w.*
science, Wissenschaft, *f. w.*
scream, schreien, *s.*
sea, Meer, *n. s. 2*; See, *f. w.*; — voyage, Seereise, Seefahrt, *f. w.*
seasick, seekrank.
season, Jahreszeit, *f. w.*
seat, Platz, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä); Sitz, *m. s. 2*; to take a —, Platz nehmen, *s.*
seat, *verb*, — one's self, sich setzen, *refl. w.*
second, (der) zweite; —ly, zweitens.
secret, *adj.*, geheim.
secure, sicher.
see, sehen, *s.*; — again, wiedersehen, *s.*; (catch sight of) erblicken, *w.*; — to it, zusehen.
seek, suchen, *w.*
seem, scheinen, *s.*
seeming(ly), scheinbar.
seize, greifen, ergreifen, *s.*; fassen, *w.*

seldom, selten.
self, selbst, selber (§ 124).
self-possessed, besonnen, *ppl. adj.*
sell, verkaufen, *w.*
send, schicken, *w.*; senden, *w. irr.* (§ 330).
sense, Sinn, *m. s. 2.*
sensible, verständig; be — of, empfinden, *s.*
September, September, *m. s. 1.*
serious, schwer; (earnest) ernst.
servant, Diener; — girl, Dienstmädchen, *n. s. 1.*
serve, dienen (*dat.*).
service, Dienst, *m. s. 2*; (attendance) Bedienung, *f. w.*
set, setzen, *w.*; — in, hereinbrechen, *s.* (*aux.* sein); — out, sich auf den Weg machen, *w.*
several, mehrere (§ 158); — times, mehrmals.
severe, (= strict) streng; (of sickness) stark.
severity, Strenge, *f.* (*no pl.*).
shade, shadow, Schatten, *m. s. 1.*
shall, *future*, werden (§ 168, 2); *modal*, sollen (§§ 189, 191).
shameful, schändlich.
share, Teil, *n. s. 2.*
share, *verb*, teilen, *w.*
she, sie.
shelter, Obdach, *n. s. 3.*
shine, scheinen, *s.*
ship, Schiff, *n. s. 2.*
shoe, Schuh, *m. s. 2.*
shoemaker, Schuhmacher, *m. s. 1.*
shop, Handlung, *f. w.*; Laden, *m. s. 1* (*pl.* ä).
shop, *verb*, Einkäufe machen, *w.*
shoot, schießen, *s.*
shore, Ufer, *n. s. 1.*
short, kurz; —ly, kurz.
shot, Schuß, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* -üsse).
show, zeigen, *w.*
shrewdly, verschmitzt.
shrewdness, Klugheit, *f. w.*
shut, schließen, *s.*
sick, krank; be taken —, erkranken, *w.*
sicken, erkranken, *w.* (*aux.* sein).
sickness, Krankheit, *f. w.*
side, Seite, *f. w.*
sight, (spectacle) Anblick, *m. s. 2*; (thing worth seeing) Sehenswürdigkeit, *f. w.*
sign, unterschreiben, *s.*
significant, bedeutend.
signify, bedeuten, *w.*
silence, Schweigen, *n. s.* (§ 365).
silent, be *or* become *or* keep —, schweigen, *s.*
silver, Silber, *n. s.* (*no pl.*).
silver, *adj.*, silbern.
similar, ähnlich (to = *dat.*)
simple, simply, einfach.
sin, Sünde, *f. w.*
since, *prep.*, seit (*dat.*); *conj.* (= because), da, indem, *sub. conj.*
sincere, (candid) aufrichtig; (hearty) herzlich.
sincerely, herzlich.
sing, singen, *s.*
single, einzig.
sink, sinken, *s.* (*aux.* sein).
sir, mein Herr.
sister, Schwester, *f. w.*
sit, sitzen, *s.*; to — down, sich setzen, *refl. w.*; let us — down, setzen wir uns (p. 43, n. 4).
sitting, — room, Wohnzimmer, *n. s. 1.*
situated, be —, liegen, *s.*
situation, Lage, *f. w.*
six, sechs.
skate, Schlittschuh, *m. s. 2.*
skate, *verb*, schlittschuhlaufen, *s.*
skill, Fertigkeit, *f. w.*
skillful, geschickt.
sky, Himmel, *m. s. 1.*
slave, Sklave, *m. w.*; Knecht, *m. s. 2.*
sleep, Schlaf, *m. s.* (*no pl.*).
sleep, *verb*, schlafen, *s.*
slow(ly), langsam.
small, klein.
smell, riechen, *s.*
smoke, rauchen, *w.*
snow, Schnee, *m. s.* (*no pl.*).
snow, *verb*, schneien.
so, so; (= accordingly, then) also; — far as I am concerned, was mich betrifft; — have I (*in answers*), das habe ich auch; — very strange, so seltsam; *referring to a foregoing verb, often translated by* es: . . . but I cannot do so, . . . aber ich kann es nicht.
so-called, sogenannt.
society, Gesellschaft, *f. w.*

sofa, Sofa, *n. s.* (*pl.* -s).
soft, (of the voice, of light) sanft.
softly, leise.
sojourn, Aufenthalt, *m. s. 2.*
soldier, Soldat, *m. w.*
sole(ly), einzig.
solve, lösen, *w.*
some, irgend ein (§ 152); *in the sing. and collectively* (*of things*), etwas (§ 151); *pl.* einig-, etlich- (§ 150); — bread, etwas Brot; — books, einige Bücher; — friend, irgend ein Freund; — friends, einige Freunde; *referring to something before mentioned*, welch (§ 162); — more, (*sing.*) noch etwas, (*pl.*) noch einige.
some one, jemand, irgend jemand (§§ 152, 154).
something, etwas.
sometimes, bisweilen, zuweilen.
somewhat, etwas.
son, Sohn, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ö).
song, Lied, *n. s. 3.*
songstress, Sängerin, *f. w.*
soon, bald; as — as, sobald, *sub. conj.*
sore, (= grave, serious) schwer.
sorrow, Leiden, *n. s. 1.*
sorrowful, traurig.
sorry, I am —, es thut mir leid.
sort, Art, *f. w.*; what — of, was für (§ 145); all sorts of, allerlei (*indcl.*).
soul, Seele, *f. w.*; (= feeling) Gemüt, *n. s. 3.*
sound, klingen, *s.*
south, Süden, *m. s.* (*no pl.*); South Germany, Süddeutschland.
southward, nach Süden.
souvenir-card, Ansichtskarte, *f. w.*
Spain, Spanien, *n.*
Spaniard, Spanier, *m. s. 1.*
Spanish, spanisch.
speak, sprechen, *s.*; to — pieces, deklamieren, *w.*
special, besonder.
spectator, Zuschauer, *m. s. 1.*
speech, (address) Rede, *f. w.*; (= language) Sprache, *f. w.*
speed, Hast, *f.* (*no pl.*).
spirit, Geist, *m. s. 3.*
spite, in — of, trotz, *prep.* (*gen. or dat.*).
splendid, prächtig; (= glorious) *herrlich.*
spoil, verderben, *s.*
spook, Gespenst, *n. s. 3.*
spoon, Löffel, *m. s. 1.*
spring, (season) Frühling, *m. s. 2.*
spring, *verb*, springen, *s.* (*aux.* sein).
stage, Bühne, *f. w.*
stairs, **stairway**, Treppe, *f. w.*
stake, be at —, gelten, *s.*
stand, stehen, *s. irr.* (§ 185).
star, Stern, *m. s. 2.*
start, Aufbruch, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü).
start, *verb*, sich auf den Weg machen, *refl. w.*
state, Staat, *m. mx.*
state, *verb*, angeben, *s.*
station, Bahnhof, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ö).
stay, (= remain) bleiben, *s.* (*aux.* sein); (= tarry, sojourn) verweilen, *w.*; sich aufhalten, *refl. s.*
stay, Aufenthalt, *m. s. 2.*
steal, stehlen, *s.*
steamer, Dampfer, *m. s. 1.*
stenographer, Stenograph, *m. w.*
step, treten, *s.* (*aux.* sein); schreiten, *s.* (*aux.* sein); — back, zurücktreten.
step, Schritt, *m. s. 2.*
stick, Stock, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ö).
stick, (= put) stecken, *w.*
still, *adj.*, ruhig.
still, *adv.*, (*time, degree*) noch; (*adversative*) doch.
stock, (supply) Vorrat, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä); (race, family) Stamm, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
stop, *intrans.*, aufhören.
store, Laden, *m. s. 1* (*pl.* ä); Handlung, *f. w.*
storm, Sturm, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü); (= thunder —) Gewitter, *n. s. 1.*
stormy, stürmisch.
story, Geschichte, *f. w.*; Erzählung, *f. w.*
stout, stark.
stove, Ofen, *m. s. 1* (*pl.* Ö).
straight, (direct) direkt.
strange, (peculiar) sonderbar, seltsam; (foreign, unwonted) fremd.
stranger, Fremde(r), *decl. like adj.* (cf. § 290, 2).
straw, Stroh, *n. s.* (*no pl.*); hat, Strohhut, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü).
stream, Strom, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ö).
street, Straße, *f. w.*

strength, Kraft, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
strict, streng.
stride, schreiten, *s.* (*aux.* sein).
strife, Streit, *m. s. 2.*
strike, schlagen, *s.*
stroke, Streich, *m. s. 2.*
strong, stark, kräftig; (= effective) wirkungsvoll; (= firm) fest.
stronghold, Burg, *f. w.*
student, Student, *m. w.;* woman —, Studentin, *f. w.;* — life, Studentenleben, *n. s. 1.*
study, Studium, *n. mx.*
study, *verb*, studieren, *w.*
stupid, dumm.
style, Stil, *m. s. 2.*
subject, Unterthan, *m. mx.*
subject, *verb*, unterwerfen, *s.*
submit, sich unterwerfen, *refl. s.;* — to (put up with), sich bequemen, *w.* (*dat.*).
subsequently, nachher.
succeed, be successful, gelingen, *impers. s. with dat.* (*aux.* sein); I did not succeed, es gelang mir nicht.
such, solch (§ 135); — a, so ein; any — thing, so etwas.
sudden(ly), plötzlich, auf einmal.
suffer, leiden, *s.*
suffering, Leiden, *n. s. 1.*
suffice, genügen, *w.*
suit (of clothes), Anzug, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü).
sum, Summe, *f. w.*
summer, Sommer, *m. s. 1;* — day, Sommertag, *m. s. 2;* — term, Sommertermin, *m. s. 2.*
summit, Gipfel, *m. s. 1.*
summon, rufen, *s.*
sun, Sonne, *f. w.*
sunbeam, Sonnenstrahl, *m. mx.*
Sunday, Sonntag, *m. s. 2.*
sunrise, Sonnenaufgang, *m. s.*
supper, Abendessen, *n. s. 1.*
supply, Vorrat, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
support, *verb*, stützen.
support, Stütze, *f. w.*
sure, sicher; to be —, freilich, allerdings; —ly, gewiß; they —ly know, man weiß doch wohl, man weiß ja.
surround, umgeben, *s.*
swamp, Sumpf, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü).
swarm, Schwarm, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
swear, schwören, *s.*
sweet, süß; a — girl, ein liebliches Mädchen; (= fragrant) lieblich.
swift, schnell.
swim, schwimmen, *s.* (*aux.* sein).
Switzerland, die Schweiz (§ 225, 3).
sword, Schwert, *n. s. 3.*
sympathy, Sympathie, *f. w.*

table, Tisch, *m. s. 2.*
tailor, Schneider, *m. s. 1.*
take, nehmen, *s.;* to — cold, sich erkälten, *refl. w.;* to — a seat, Platz nehmen; to — a walk, einen Spaziergang machen, *w.;* to — off (a garment), ausziehen, *s.*
tale, Erzählung, *f. w.*
talk, reden, *w.;* there is much — about, man redet viel über (*or* von), es wird viel geredet über.
tall, hoch; (of persons) groß.
tally, stimmen, *w.*
tarry, verweilen, *w.*
task, Aufgabe, *f. w.*
taste, Geschmack, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä, *rare*); artistic —, Kunstgeschmack.
teach, unterrichten, lehren, *w.;* — to (show), belehren.
teacher, Lehrer, *m. s. 1;* woman —, Lehrerin, *f. w.*
tear, Thräne, *f. w.*
tear, zerreißen, *s.*
tedious, langweilig.
tell, sagen, *w.;* (= relate) erzählen, *w.;* (= inform of) mitteilen, *w.*
ten, zehn.
tendency, Tendenz, *f. w.*
term, Termin, *m. s. 2.*
terrible, schrecklich.
test, Prüfung, *f. w.*
text (for reading), Lektüre, *f. w.*
text-book, Lehrbuch, *n. s. 3.*
thaler, Thaler, *m. s. 1.*
than, als.
thank, danken, *w.* (*dat.*); (I) — you, danke.
thankful, dankbar.
thanks, Dank, *m. s.* (*no pl.*).
that, *dem. pron.*, das; jener (§ 129); *rel. pron.*, der, die, das; welcher, welche, welches (§§ 136–139); *with neut. pron. or adj.*

or a sentence, as antecedent, was (§ 141, *a*, 2).
that, *conj.*, daß, *sub. conj.*
the, *def. art.*, der, die, das (§ 72); *with comp.:* — more, desto mehr; *in 'proportional' clauses:* — more . . . — better, je mehr . . . je (*or* desto) besser (§ 381, 1, *f*).
theater, Theater, *n. s. 1.*
their, ihr.
them, *dat.* ihnen, *acc.* sie; there are six of —, es sind deren sechs.
then, (*inferential*) denn, also; (*temporal*) dann; just —, zur Zeit.
there, da, dort; — is, — are, es giebt, *also* es ist, es sind (§ 340); in —, drinnen.
therefore, darum, daher.
therein, drinnen, darin.
thereupon, darauf.
they, sie; *indef.*, man.
thick, dick; (= dense) dicht; a — book, ein dickes Buch; a — woods, ein dichter Wald.
thicket, Gebüsch, *n. s. 2.*
thief, Dieb, *m. s. 2;* (woman) —, Diebin, *f. w.*
thing, Ding, *n. s. 2;* (= matter, affair) Sache, *f. w.;* any such — as, so etwas wie.
think, denken, *w. irr.* (§ 330); meinen, *w.;* (= believe) glauben, *w.;* to — of, an (*acc.*) . . . denken; — of (remember), gedenken (*gen.*); to — much of (*i.e.*, esteem) one, viel von einem halten, *s.*
third, (der) dritte.
this, dies (§§ 129, 130); — time, diesmal; — evening, heute abend.
thorough(ly), gründlich; (= complete) vollkommen.
those, — are, das sind (§ 131, 1).
though, *sub. conj.*, obgleich, obwohl; *adv.*, doch; wasn't it warm —, war es doch warm.
thought, Gedanke, *m. mx.* (*gen.* -ns).
thousand, tausend.
threaten, drohen, *w.* (*dat.*).
three, drei; — times, dreimal.
throat, Hals, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
through, durch (*acc.*); — with, fertig *mit (dat.)*.
throw, *werfen, s.*
thunder, — storm, Gewitter, *n. s. 1.*
Thursday, Donnerstag, *m. s. 2.*
thus, so, also.
ticket, Billet, *n. s. 2* (*pl.* -tte).
time, (duration) Zeit, *f. w.;* (occasion) Mal, *n. s. 2;* this —, diesmal; at the —, damals; (at) what —, (um) wie viel Uhr: for a —, eine Zeitlang; for a long —, lange; once upon a —, einmal'; some —, einst; for the — being, vorläufig.
times, at —, bisweilen.
timid, furchtsam.
tire, ermüden, *w.*
tired, müde.
title, Titel, *m. s. 1.*
to, *often translated by the dative, esp. with indirect object of a verb and with some adjectives* (§§ 258, 260); zu (*dat.*), nach (*dat.*), an (*acc.*), gegen (*acc.*), cf. § 377, *s. v.;* — and fro, hin und her; — the concert, ins Konzert; — the edge, bis an den Rand; to step — the window, ans Fenster treten; — London, — the station, nach London, nach dem Bahnhofe; go — bed, zu Bett gehen; go — church, zur Kirche gehen; write —, an (*acc.*) . . . schreiben; kind —, freundlich gegen; *with inf.*, —, in order —, zu, um zu (§ 367, 1 and *a*); *omitted with certain verbs*, § 366, 1, 2.
tobacco, Tabak, *m. s. 2.*
to-day, heute.
to-day's, heutig, *adj.*
together, zusammen.
tolerably, ziemlich.
to-morrow, morgen; — evening, morgen abend; — morning, morgen früh; day after —, übermorgen.
to-night, heute abend.
too, (*of degree*) zu; (= also) auch.
tooth, Zahn, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
toothache, Zahnschmerz, *m. mx.*
top, Gipfel, *m. s. 1;* Spitze, *f. w.*
tormented, be —, sich quälen, *refl. w.*
torrent, Strom, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ö).
toward(s), gegen (*acc.*), nach (*dat.*), entgegen (*dat.*), § 377.
tower, Turm, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü).
town, Stadt, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ä); **little** —, Städtchen, *n. s. 1.*

trade, Handel, *m. s.* (*no pl.*); by — (calling), seines Zeichens.
train, Zug, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü); express —, Schnellzug.
tramp, (pedestrian tour) Fußwanderung, *f. w.*
translate, übersetzen, *w.*
translation, (act of translating) Übersetzen, *n. s.* (§ 365).
travel, fahren, *s.* (*aux.* sein); reisen (*aux.*, § 323, 1, *c*).
travel(s), Reise, *f. w.*; Wanderung, *f. w.*
traveller, Reisende(r), *decl. like adj.* (§ 290, 2).
tread, *intr.* treten, *s.* (*aux.* sein); *tr.* betreten.
treat, behandeln, *w.*
treatment, Behandlung, *f. w.*
tree, Baum, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* äu).
tremble, zittern, *w.*
trial, (test) Prüfung, *f. w.*
tributary, Nebenfluß, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* -üsse).
trick, Streich, *m. s. 2.*
trifle, Kleinigkeit, *f. w.*
trip, Reise, Fahrt, *f. w.*
triviality, Kleinigkeit, *f. w.*
trouble, (difficulty) Mühe, *f. w.*; (suffering) Leiden, *n. s. 1*; (distress) Not, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ö).
trouble, *verb* (worry), bange machen, *w.* (*with dat. of pers.*); (concern) kümmern; he doesn't — himself about it, er kümmert sich nicht darum.
true, wahr; (= faithful) treu.
truly, wahrhaft.
trunk, Koffer, *m. s. 1.*
trust, vertrauen, *w.* (*dat.*).
truth, Wahrheit, *f. w.*
truthful, wahrhaft.
try, versuchen, *w.*
Tuesday, Dienstag, *m. s. 2.*
turn, wenden, *w. irr.* (§ 330).
turn out, werden, *irr.* (*aux.* sein).
twelve, zwölf.
twenty, zwanzig; twentieth, (der) zwanzigste; the — first, der einundzwanzigste.
twice, zweimal.
two, zwei; the —, die beiden (§ 148).
tyrant, Tyrann, *m. w.*
umbrella, Regenschirm, *m. s. 2.*
unamiable, unfreundlich.
unanswered, unbeantwortet.
unbearable, unerträglich.
uncle, Onkel, *m. s. 1*; Oheim, *m. s. 2.*
under, unter (*dat. and acc.*); — it, — that, darunter.
understand, verstehen, *s.*
understanding, Verständnis, *n. s. 2*; Verstand, *m. s.* (*no pl.*).
undertake, unternehmen, *s.*
undisturbed, ungetrübt.
undoubtedly, unzweifelhaft.
uneasy, unruhig.
unfortunately, leider (p. 102, n. 1); unglücklicherweise.
unfriendly, unfreundlich.
ungrateful, undankbar.
unhappiness, Unglück, *n. s.* (*no pl.*).
unhappy, unglücklich, unglückselig.
united, vereinigt.
university, Universität, *f. w.*
unkind, unfreundlich.
unpleasant, unangenehm.
unrest, Unruhe, *f. w.*
unsatisfactory, ungenügend.
unthankful, undankbar.
until, bis; not — (this evening), erst (heute abend).
unwelcome, unwillkommen.
unwell, unwohl.
up, auf; — there, droben; further —, weiter hinauf *or* aufwärts.
upon, auf (*dat. and acc.*); once — a time, einmal'; — the whole, im ganzen.
upper, ober-.
us, *dat. and acc.* uns.
use, *verb*, gebrauchen, *w.*; benutzen, *w.*; (= spend, *as time*) zubringen, *w. irr.* (§ 330).
use, make — of, brauchen, *w.* (*gen.*).
usual(ly), gewöhnlich.
utterly, vollends, ganz und gar.

vacation, Ferien, *pl. only.*
vain, in —, vergebens.
valley, Thal, *n. s. 3.*
value, schätzen, *w.*
vanish, schwinden, verschwinden, *s.* (*aux.* sein).
vengeance, Rache, *f.* (*no pl.*).
Venice, Venedig.
venture, wagen, *w.*

verb, Verbum, *n. s.* (*pl.* -ba).
veritable, wahrhaft.
very, sehr; — much (*of degree*), sehr; — well (= agreed, 'all right'), sehr gern; he is doing — well, es geht ihm sehr gut.
Vesuvius, Vesuv, *m.*
vexed, be —, sich ärgern, *refl. w.*
vicinity, Nähe, *f. w.*
victory, Sieg, *m. s. 2.*
view, (sight of) Anblick, *m. s. 2;* (opinion) Ansicht, *f. w.;* (prospect) Aussicht, *f. w.;* take a — of, in Augenschein nehmen, *s.;* in — of all that, nach alle (§ 317, 1) dem.
village, Dorf, *n. s. 3;* little —, Dörfchen, *n. s. 1.*
villager, Dorfbewohner, *m. s. 1.*
violent, heftig.
violet, Veilchen, *n. s. 1.*
visit, *verb*, besuchen, *w.*
visit, Besuch, *m. s. 2.*
voice, Stimme, *f. w.*
vote, Stimme, *f. w.*
vote, *verb*, stimmen, *w.*
vow, geloben, *w.*
voyage, Seereise, Seefahrt, *f. w.*
vulgarity, Gemeinheit, *f. w.*

wagon, Wagen, *m. s. 1.*
wait, warten, *w.* (for = auf, *acc.*).
wake, wachen.
walk (for pleasure), Spaziergang, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ä); take a —, einen Spaziergang machen.
walk, *verb*, gehen, *s. irr.* (§ 185, *aux.* sein); — about, herumgehen; go walking (for pleasure), spazieren gehen.
wall, (of a room) Wand, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ä); (brick or stone —), Mauer, *f. w.;* — of rock, Felswand, *f. s. 2* (*pl.* ä).
wandering, Wanderung, *f. w.*
want, (= desire) mögen (§§ 189, 191), wünschen, *w.;* (= need) brauchen, *w.;* (= require, demand) verlangen, *w.*
war, Krieg, *m. s. 2.*
war-ship, Kriegsschiff, *n. s. 2.*
warm, warm; grow —, erwarmen, *w.* (*aux.* sein).
warn, warnen, *w.* (of = vor, *dat.*).
warning, Warnung, *f. w.*
waste, vergeuden, *w.*
watch, Taschenuhr, Uhr, *f. w.*
water, Wasser, *n. s. 1.*
way, Weg, Pfad, *m. s. 2;* (= manner) Art, Weise, *f. w.;* the — home, the — back, der Heimweg, Rückweg; by — of, über (*acc.*); in the — of, in (*dat.*); lose one's — sich verirren, *refl. w.*
we, wir.
weak, schwach.
wealth, Vermögen, *n. s. 1;* Reichtum, *m. s. 3.*
wear, tragen, *s.*
weather, Wetter, *n. s. 1.*
Wednesday, Mittwoch, *m. s. 2.*
week, Woche, *f. w.*
weekly, wöchentlich.
weep, weinen, *w.*
weigh, wiegen, *s.*
welcome, willkommen.
welfare, Wohl, *n. s.* (*no pl.*).
well, *adj.* (in good health) gesund.
well, *adv.*, gut; very — (= agreed, 'all right'), sehr gern; he has done that —, das hat er gut gemacht; (of the health) wohl; I am —, I am doing —, ich befinde mich wohl; I do not feel —, mir ist nicht wohl.
well, *interj.* (as an introductory word), nun.
well-behaved, artig.
well-known, wohlbekannt.
west, Westen, *m. s.* (*no pl.*).
west, *adj.*, westlich.
westward, westlich.
wet, naß.
what, *inter. pron.*, was, welch; *inter adj.*, welch (§§ 143, 144); *compound rel. pron.* (= whatever), was (§ 141); — sort, kind of, was für (§ 145); — for, wozu.
wheel, Rad, *n. s. 3.*
when, *inter.* wann; *rel.*, wenn (*of pres. and fut. and repeated action in past*); als (*of simple past*), *sub. conj.* (§ 381, 1, *a, b, i, k, l*).
whence, woher.
where, wo.
whether, ob, *sub. conj.*
which, *rel. pron.*, der, welch (§§ 136–138); *inter. pron.*, welch (§ 144); *with neut. pron. or*

adj., *or a sentence*, *as antecedent*, was (§ 141, *a*, 2).
while, Zeit, *f. w.;* (for) a —, eine Zeitlang; (= pains), Mühe, *f. w.;* worth —, der Mühe wert.
while, indem, während, *sub. conj.*
white, weiß.
Whitsuntide, Pfingsten, *pl. only.*
who, *rel. pron.*, der, welch (§§ 136–138); *compound rel.*, whoever, he —, wer (§ 140); *inter. pron.*, wer (§§ 143, 144).
whoever, wer, wer auch.
whole, ganz; on the —, im ganzen.
why, *inter.*, warum, weshalb; *interj.*, doch.
wide, weit; (= broad) breit; far and —, weit und breit.
wife, Frau, *f. w.;* Weib, *n. s. 3.*
wild, wild.
will, *future*, werden (§ 186, 2); *modal*, wollen (§§ 189, 191).
will, Wille, *m. mx.* (*gen.* -ns).
willingly, gern.
win, gewinnen, *s.*
wind, Wind, *m. s. 2.*
window, Fenster, *n. s. 1.*
wine, Wein, *m. s. 2.*
wing, Flügel, *m. s. 1.*
winter, Winter, *m. s. 1;* — evening, Winterabend, *m. s. 2.*
wisdom, Weisheit, *f. w.*
wise, weise.
wish, wünschen, *w.;* wollen (§§ 189, 191).
wish, Wunsch, *m. s. 2* (*pl.* ü).
witch, Hexe, *f. w.*
with, mit (*dat.*); — it, damit; (= in the family *or* at the house of), bei (*dat.*).
withal, dazu.
withdraw, zurückziehen, *s.*
within, (*of time only*) binnen (*dat.*).
without, ohne (*acc.*).
woe! weh!
woman, Dame, *f. w.;* Frau, *f. w.*, Weib, *n. s. 3.*
wonder, Wunder, *n. s. 1.*
wonder, *verb*, sich wundern, *refl. w.;* I wonder (am surprised) that, mich wundert's, daß; I — whether, ich möchte wissen, ob; how late is it, I —, wie spät ist es wohl.
wonderful, wunderbar.
wood, Holz, *n. s. 3;* 'woods', Wald, *m. s. 3.*
word, Wort, *n. s. 2–3* (§ 276, *a*).
work, (*abstract*, = labor) Arbeit, *f. w.;* (of an author) Werk, *n. s. 2;* (*collectively in the abstract*, = activity) Wirken, *n. s.* (§ 365).
workman, **workingman**, Arbeiter, *m. s. 1.*
work-of-art, Kunstwerk, *n. s. 2.*
world, Welt, *f. w.*
world-famous, weltberühmt.
worn-out, erschöpft.
worth while, to be —, sich lohnen, *refl. w.*
worse, **worst**, schlechter, schlechtest-; schlimmer, schlimmst-.
worth, wert (*gen.*).
worthy, würdig (of = *gen.*).
wretched, elend.
write, schreiben, *s.;* — to, schreiben an (*acc.*).
writer, (author) Schriftsteller, *m. s. 1.*
writing, Schrift, *f. w.*
wrong, *adj.*, unrecht; (= incorrect) falsch.
wrong, Unrecht, *n. s. 2.*

year, Jahr, *n. s. 2;* — in and — out, Jahr aus Jahr ein; for a — and a day, auf Jahr und Tag.
yellow, gelb.
yes, ja; — indeed, jawohl.
yesterday, gestern; — morning, gestern morgen; day before —, vorgestern.
yet, (*temporal*) noch; (*adversative*) doch; not —, noch nicht.
yonder, dort; over —, drüben.
you, du (§ 301, *a*, 1, 4): ihr (*pl.* of du); Sie (*polite address*, § 301, 3, 4); *acc.* dich, euch, Sie; *dat.* dir, euch, Ihnen; *the forms of* **du** *and* **ihr** *are capitalized in letters* (§ 301, 5); *indef.*, man (§§ 156, 149, 1).
young, jung; — lady, Fräulein, *n. s. 1;* — man, Jüngling, *m. s. 2.*
youngish, jünger.
your, dein, euer, Ihr (§§ 125, 301, 5).

yours, (der) deinige, eurige, Ihrige, etc. (§ 126, 1); a friend of —, ein Freund von dir, Ihnen.

yourself, *emphatic*, selbst; *refl.*, §§ 123, 201, 202.

youth, (*abstract* or *collective*) Jugend, *f.* (*no pl.*); (*concrete*) Junge, *m. w.*; Jüngling, *m. s. 2.*

zeal, Eifer, *m. s.* (*no pl.*).

To avoid fine, this book should be returned on
or before the date last stamped below

10M—6-40

Hervey, W.A. 602795
Supplementary exercises to Thomas'
practical German grammar

NAME	DATE	NAME	DATE

LIBRARY, SCHOOL OF EDUCATION, STANFORD
602795

TK
435
H59